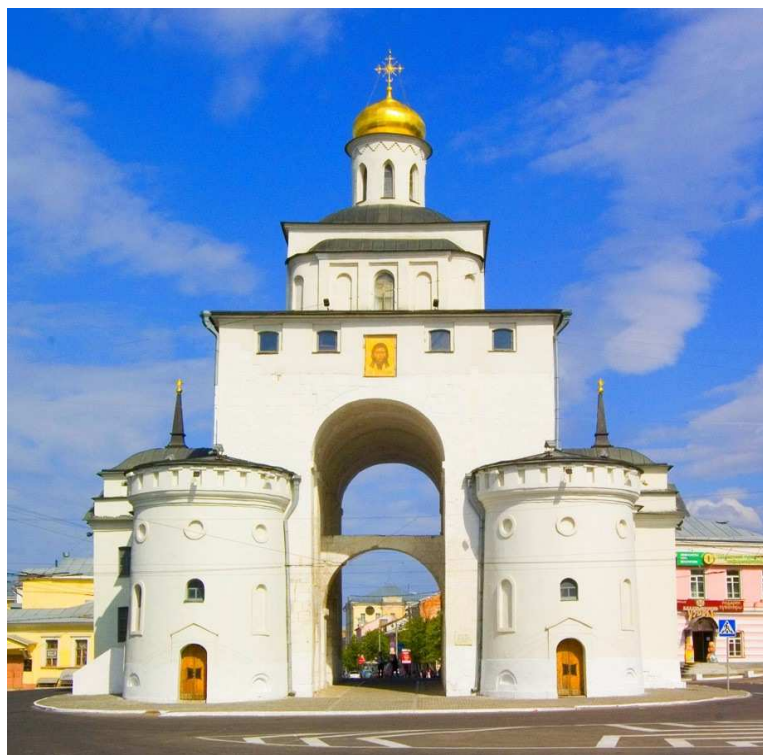


Владимирский государственный университет

А. А. ИЩЕНКО О. В. ПОПКОВА Т. И. МАТЯР

# ВЛАДИМИРСКИЙ КРАЙ С ДРЕВНЕЙШИХ ВРЕМЕН ДО XVIII ВЕКА

Учебное пособие по истории  
на английском языке



Владимир 2022

Министерство науки и высшего образования Российской Федерации  
Федеральное государственное бюджетное образовательное учреждение  
высшего образования  
«Владимирский государственный университет  
имени Александра Григорьевича и Николая Григорьевича Столетовых»

А. А. ИЩЕНКО О. В. ПОПКОВА Т. И. МАТЯР

# ВЛАДИМИРСКИЙ КРАЙ С ДРЕВНЕЙШИХ ВРЕМЕН ДО XVIII ВЕКА

Учебное пособие по истории на английском языке



Владимир 2022

УДК 811.111 + 94 (470.314)  
ББК 81.2Англ + 63.3 (2Рос-4Вла)  
И98

Рецензенты:

Кандидат филологических наук  
доцент кафедры современного образования  
Российского университета кооперации (Владимирский филиал)  
*С. В. Бузина*

Кандидат исторических наук, доцент  
доцент кафедры истории, археологии и краеведения  
Владимирского государственного университета  
имени Александра Григорьевича и Николая Григорьевича Столетовых  
*Т. М. Голубкина*

Издается по решению редакционно-издательского совета ВлГУ

**Ищенко, А. А.** Владимирский край с древнейших времен до  
И98 XVIII века : учеб. пособие по истории на англ. яз. /  
А. А. Ищенко, О. В. Попкова, Т. И. Матяр ; Владим. гос. ун-т им.  
А. Г. и Н. Г. Столетовых. – Владимир : Изд-во ВлГУ, 2022. –  
223 с. – ISBN 978-5-9984-1489-3.

Включает лекции и коммуникативно-ориентированные задания на английском языке по истории и культуре Владимирского края с древнейших времен до XVIII века.

Предназначено для студентов 2 – 3-го курсов бакалавриата и 1-го курса магистратуры направлений 46.03.01, 46.04.01 «История», 1-го курса направления 45.03.02 «Лингвистика», 4-го курса направления 43.03.02 «Туризм», а также будет полезно студентам других направлений, изучающих историю и культуру Владимирского края.

Рекомендовано для формирования профессиональных компетенций в соответствии с ФГОС ВО.

Библиогр.: 14 назв.

УДК 811.111 + 94 (470.314)  
ББК 81.2Англ + 63.3 (2Рос-4Вла)

ISBN 978-5-9984-1489-3

© ВлГУ, 2022

## ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Учебное пособие призвано расширить и углубить знания студентов в области истории и культуры Владимирского края. Изучение истории родного края позволяет человеку ощутить свою причастность к историческому процессу.

Пособие содержит лекции и материалы для практических занятий на английском языке по истории и культуре Владимирского края с древнейших времен до XVIII века.

Пособие состоит из восьми разделов, представленных в хронологическом порядке. Каждый раздел состоит из частей, включающих термины, лекции и задания, направленные на развитие навыков коммуникации, творческого и критического анализа, независимого мышления.

Активному усвоению материала способствует сочетание разных видов деятельности в рамках каждой темы. Особое внимание уделяется умению быстро извлекать информацию из прочитанного, высказывать собственную точку зрения. После выполнения заданий к текстам студенты приступают к подготовке собственных сообщений и презентаций по предложенным темам. Практические занятия дают возможность обсудить изучаемый материал, использовать информацию, найденную студентами в ходе самостоятельной работы. Обсуждение докладов и презентаций помогает развить навыки социального общения.

Материалы, представленные в пособии, способствуют повышению интеллектуального и культурного уровня студентов, интересующихся историей родного края.

## UNIT 1

### OUR REGION IN THE PERIOD OF ANCIENT HISTORY

#### *Lesson 1. Periods of Ancient History. The Vladimir Region in the Paleolithic Period. Sunghir Archaeological Site*

*Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:*

1) archaeological finds	❖ археологические находки
2) skull	❖ череп
3) excavations	❖ раскопки
4) fertile	❖ плодородный
5) extinct	❖ вымерший
6) settlement	❖ поселение
7) count	❖ граф
8) to make a real stir	❖ стать настоящей сенсацией
9) foundation pit	❖ котлован
10) to stumble (across)	❖ наткнуться на что-либо
11) spear	❖ копье
12) tusk	❖ бивень
13) scraper	❖ скребок
14) awl	❖ шило
15) burial	❖ погребение
16) auger	❖ сверло
17) bead	❖ бусы
18) pelts	❖ овчина
19) chamois	❖ замша
20) embroidered	❖ расшитый
21) fang	❖ клык
22) pin	❖ заколка
23) burial rite	❖ обряд захоронения
24) grave goods	❖ погребальный инвентарь
25) sinew	❖ жила, сухожилие

The Vladimir region is situated between the Volga and the Oka Rivers. Modern science cannot tell for sure when people began to inhabit this area. These people could not write. That's why there are no written records and the earliest history of this area is known only from **archaeological finds**. Ancient artifacts unearthed in the region are being widely studied by archaeologists. Anthropologists help archeologists. According to the fragments of **skulls** and skeletons found during **excavations**, they can restore the appearance of the people who lived long, long ago and study how a man has been changing.

According to the materials that a man used to make tools, the ancient history of mankind is divided into the Stone Age, Bronze Age and Iron Age periods. The Stone Age in turn is subdivided into the Paleolithic, Mesolithic, Neolithic periods.

Towards the end of the Late Paleolithic Epoch a great change took place in climate of the whole globe. The Ice Age set in. In Eastern Europe a huge sheet of ice spread southwards as far as the middle reaches of the Dnieper and the Don. The tundra, land that remained frozen all the year round, stretched into the **fertile** lands of what is now Ukraine. A similar sheet of ice invaded a huge area of the continent of Asia. The former flora and fauna disappeared, and warmth-loving animals either retreated to the south or became **extinct**.

These climatic changes had a no less serious effect on a primitive man and his conditions of life. But a man proved able to hold his own in the struggle against nature and to adapt himself to the new conditions. He began to occupy tremendous stretches of land that had formerly been uninhabited.

Archaeologists have found out that primitive people settled in this area in the Late Paleolithic period. Such **settlements** of the primitive men as Karacharovo, Rusanikha, Sunghir date back to the Late or Upper Palaeolithic Age about 25 – 30 thousand years ago.

At the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century one of the first Russian archaeologists **count** Aleksey Sergeyevich Uvarov studied the primitive people's settlement on the Oka River bank at the village of Karacharovo (not far from Murom). There the bones of such animals as mammoths, reindeer and woolly rhinoceros as well as numerous stone tools were found. In the 20<sup>th</sup>

century on the Rpen River in the north-west of Vladimir outskirts the traces of one more settlement Rusanikha were discovered. Archaeologists found there a great number of animal bones and assumed it to have been a temporary camp of some mammoth hunters.

The discovery of the Sunghir settlement in the east of Vladimir outskirts **made a real stir**. It was discovered quite accidentally; when the **foundation pit** of the brickworks was being made an excavator operator **stumbled** across even layers of large animals, bones of 15 – 20 cm thick. Since 1956 there had been the study of this site, which had lasted for about 40 years. For about 20 years the excavations had been held under the supervision of Otto Nikolayevich Bader, a most prominent expert in the Stone Age history.

According to the archaeological finds Sunghir was a hunters' camp. At this site they found a lot of bones of such animals as mammoths, horses, polar foxes and reindeer. Sunghir settlers hunted by means of **spears** and darts. Animal carcasses were cut by long (about 40 cm) knives made from mammoths' **tusks**. Frequently there occurred various tools for animal skins processing such as: **scrapers**, knives and **awls**. Processed skins were later on used for making clothes and footwear. A part of the strongest skins was used for making dwellings. These dwellings were temporal tent-like dwellings assembled on a wooden frame. All in all the remains of four such dwellings with fireplace holes were found in Sunghir.

The most unique finds were two **burials**. One was that of a grown-up man, the other was a twin burial.

First archeologists found the remains of a man of 55 – 60 years old; the age itself is already unique because the longevity at that period was about 20 – 25 years. The skeleton was well preserved. It was covered full length with seven rows of 3,5 thousand beads made of mammoth's tusks. Taking into account the "technology" of the period (a knife and **auger** made of flint rock) it took a Sunghir dweller about 30 minutes to make every single bead. So a man should have been working for 73 days without having any rest to decorate his clothes with beads in such a way. In that period of time when the most important task was hunting for food a man could not afford such

unproductive waste of time as making beads for more than two months thus we can assume that the buried man was not an ordinary one but some dignitary.

According to the layout of **beads** in the burial the researchers reconstructed the clothes of the buried man: a parka-type pullover shirt made of **pelts** or **chamois**, long trousers and leather boots. On his head he wore a fur hood **embroidered** with polar fox **fangs**, on his hands there were bone bracelets. The whole burial was densely covered with the layer of red ochre (natural mineral paint) to 3 cm deep.

The second burial was a twinned one. There were the remains of children lying head to head. There were also many beads (7,5 thousand), a dense layer of ochre and bone bracelets. Children's clothes were similar to those from the first burial but there were some items added: fur tunics fastened in front with some bone **pins**.

Yet more fascinating than the **burial rite** were the found **grave goods**. First of all there were two spears of 242 and 166 cm long made of split mammoth's tusks. Even the modern science cannot give a definite answer of how the mammoth's tusks were straitened. In addition to them in the grave there were darts, daggers made of animal bones and disks with holes cut in them. One of the disks was put on a dart for some ceremony purpose, though their real purpose has not been determined yet.

The so-called Sunghir horse became widely known. It is a small bone figurine resembling very much the figure of a pregnant horse. The figurine is decorated with pit ornament repeating its outline and on its hind leg there is a hole. Quite probably that horse figurine was an amulet and was worn either stitched or tied onto clothes with the help of a very thin **sinew**.

The study of skulls found in the burials brought one more surprise. The technique of human appearance reconstruction according to skeletal bones, which includes faces reconstruction according to the found skulls has been known for a long time. This work is done in the special laboratories by paleoanthropologists (scientists studying physical structure of ancient people). They came to the conclusion that the grown-up man belonged to the European or Caucasian race with some features of a Mongoloid man (the so-called "eastern Cro-Magnon man"). The children belonged to the Europoid



race with some Negroid features. Anthropologists believe all these features to be the Neanderthal man features that are the features of a man from the Middle Paleolithic Age who lived about 350 – 35 thousand years ago. That means that in that period of time, in the epoch of the Late Paleolithic Age, in Europe alongside with the modern-type, Cro-Magnon man, Neanderthal people also existed.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                            |                                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1) to inhabit;             | a) жилище;                            |
| 2) tremendous;             | b) письменные свидетельства;          |
| 3) rhinoceros;             | c) очажные ямы;                       |
| 4) outskirts;              | d) парное погребение;                 |
| 5) brickworks;             | e) останки;                           |
| 6) appearance;             | f) кремьень;                          |
| 7) processed skin;         | g) населять;                          |
| 8) dwelling;               | h) расщепленные бивни мамонта;        |
| 9) fire place holes;       | i) почетное, высокопоставленное лицо; |
| 10) twin burial;           | j) кирпичный завод;                   |
| 11) split mammoth's tusks; | k) обработанная шкура;                |
| 12) dignitary;             | l) окраина;                           |
| 13) written records;       | m) огромный;                          |
| 14) flint rock;            | n) носорог;                           |
| 15) remains.               | o) внешность.                         |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. Археологи установили, что уже в эпоху позднего оледенения на территории нашего края находились стоянки первобытных людей: Карачарово, Русаниха, Сунгирь.

2. Настоящей сенсацией стало открытие на окраине города Владимира Сунгирской стоянки.

3. Более двадцати лет раскопками руководил Отто Николаевич Бадер, один из крупнейших специалистов по каменному веку.

4. Охотились сунгирцы с помощью копий и дротиков, а разделывали туши при помощи длинных (около 40 см) ножей, сделанных из бивня мамонта.

5. Самыми уникальными находками на Сунгире являются погребения: одно – взрослого мужчины, второе – парное.

6. Вероятно, в найденном захоронении находились останки нерядового члена племени.

7. Еще более сильное впечатление, чем обряд захоронения, на нас произвел найденный в могиле погребальный инвентарь.

8. Наибольшую известность получила так называемая сунгирская лошадка.

9. Возможно, сама «лошадка» служила амулетом, ее пришивали или привязывали к одежде, продев в отверстие лошадки тонкую жилу.

10. Уже давно была разработана методика восстановления внешнего облика человека по сохранившимся костным останкам, в том числе восстановление мягких тканей лица по черепу.

11. Следовательно, в Европе в этот период, в эпоху позднего палеолита, человек современного типа (кроманьонец) сосуществовал с неандертальцами.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Modern science cannot tell for sure when people began to ... this area.

- a) conquer;                      b) inhabit;                      c) invade.

2. According to the fragments of ... found during excavations they can restore the appearance of the people who lived long, long ago and study how a man has been changing.

- a) skulls and skeletons;      b) written records;      c) dwellings.

3. At the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century one of the first Russian archaeologists count Aleksey Sergeyevich Uvarov studied the primitive people settlement on the Oka River bank at the village of ... (not far from Murom).

- a) Sunghir;                      b) Rusanikha;                      c) Karacharovo.

4. For about 20 years the ... had been held under the supervision of Otto Nikolayevich Bader, a most prominent expert in the Stone Age history.

- a) observation;                      b) excavations;                      c) negotiation.

5. The discovery of the Sunghir settlement ... of Vladimir outskirts made a real stir.

- a) in the east;                      b) in the west;                      c) in the south.

6. A part of the strongest skins was used for making ... .

- a) fire place holes;                      b) clothes;                      c) dwellings.

7. The most unique finds were ... .

- a) two burials;                      b) tools;                      c) utensils.

8. First they found the remains of a man of ... years old.

- a) 55 – 60;                      b) 20 – 25;                      c) 40 – 45.

9. According to the layout of beads in the burial the researchers reconstructed the ... of the buried man.

- a) appearance;                      b) settlement site;                      c) clothes.

10. In that period of time when the most important task was ... for food a man could not afford such unproductive waste of time as making beads for more than two months thus we can assume that the buried man was not an ordinary one but some dignitary.

- a) gardening;                      b) hunting;                      c) earth tilling.

11. Human appearance reconstruction according to skeletal bones, which includes faces reconstruction according to the found skulls is done in special laboratories by ... .

- a) archeologists;                      b) paleoanthropologists;                      c) ethnographers.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. The earliest history is known only from written records.

2. Towards the end of the Iron Age a great change took place in the climate of the whole globe.

3. These climatic changes didn't have a serious effect on a primitive man and his conditions of life.

4. Rusanikha was a permanent camp of some mammoth hunters.

5. The study of the Sunghir settlement had lasted for about 10 years.
6. According to the archaeological finds Sunghir was a hunters' camp.
7. Sunghir settlers hunted by means of awls.
8. There were no any fire place holes in dwellings of the Sunghir settlers.
9. The found grave goods didn't interest archeologists.
10. Archeologists found two spears of 242 and 166 cm long made of flint in the burials of the Sunghir settlement.
11. The so-called Sunghir horse was used to decorate dwellings.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Can the modern science give a definite answer when people began to inhabit the area between the Volga and the Oka Rivers?
2. What is the main source for studying the earliest history of the Vladimir region?
3. What periods is the ancient history of the Vladimir region divided into?
4. How did a great change in climate of the whole globe effect the environment and a primitive man's way of life?
5. What settlements of primitive men were found in the Late Paleolithic period on the territory of our region?
6. What did one of the first Russian archaeologists count Aleksey Sergeyevich Uvarov find in the primitive people's settlement on the Oka River bank at the village of Karacharovo?
7. How was the Sunghir settlement discovered?
8. Who supervised the excavations in Sunghir?
9. What was the Sunghir settlement?
10. What did the Sunghir settlers use for hunting?
11. What grave goods were there?
12. What burials were there in the Sunghir settlement? Describe them.
13. What was the so called Sunghir horse?

***Task 7. Be ready to describe the settlements of primitive people found on the territory of the Vladimir region.***

## **Lesson 2. The Vladimir Region in the Mesolithic, Neolithic, Bronze and Iron Periods**

**Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:**

1) conifer	❖ хвойное дерево
2) deciduous trees	❖ лиственные деревья
3) elk	❖ лось
4) beaver	❖ бобр
5) herd	❖ стадо
6) taming	❖ приручать
7) arrowheads	❖ наконечники стрел
8) axe	❖ топор
9) sophisticated finish	❖ тщательная обработка
10) modeled	❖ лепная
11) indented	❖ зубчатый
12) dagger	❖ кинжал
13) gouge	❖ долото
14) addice	❖ тесло
15) burial ground	❖ грунтовый могильник
16) clan cemetery	❖ родовой могильник
17) cattle-breeding	❖ скотоводство
18) earth-tilling	❖ земледелие
19) to exterminate	❖ истребить, искоренить
20) promontory	❖ мыс
21) rampart	❖ вал
22) moat	❖ ров
23) potter's wheel	❖ гончарный круг
24) slash-and-burn	❖ огневое подсечное (земледелие)
25) hoe	❖ мотыга
26) casting	❖ литье
27) chasing	❖ чеканка
28) forging	❖ кузнечный способ

Since the Late Stone Age our region had not been uninhabited for a long period of time. It is confirmed by the sites of Yelin Bor (on the Oka, 25 km to Murom), Mikulino and Petrushino (at the village of Turvishchy, Gus-Khrustalny district) dated back to the period of the Middle Stone Age (Mesolith) in the 8<sup>th</sup> – 6<sup>th</sup> millennia BC. When the Ice Age was over, climate again underwent a considerable change, and the world became warmer. Forests grew up in the areas freed from ice; in the north there were forests of **conifers**, further south mixed forests of conifers and **deciduous trees** and still further south the steppes – almost the same as they are today. Big animals such as mammoths became extinct. New species of animals appeared – **elks**, the noble deer, wild pigs, **beavers**, brown bears and others. The Mesolithic hunters did not live long in one place; they followed the **herds** of reindeer and other animals with which they had been living side by side for thousands of years.

At that time a primitive man made one of his greatest inventions, a bow, which gave hunting a completely new scope. With his arrows a man was able to shoot down the smaller animals found in huge numbers. The time was also ripe for the development of animal husbandry, the source of which was the **taming** of wounded animals or their offspring. The skeletons of dogs found in Mesolithic encampments show that a dog was the first domesticated animal.

The archaeological finds on the Mesolithic sites in the region are mainly flint **arrowheads**, **axes**, scrapers and other tools, unlike Paleolithic tools they are characterized by more **sophisticated finish**.

In this period a primitive man evolved a new form of social organization. This new organization, based on blood relationship, was the matriarchal clan, the most ancient form of the clan system.

The archaeological site dating back to the Neolithic period (late 5 – 3 millennium BC) survived at the village of Panfilovo (the Murom district). In the Vladimir region there found traces of dozens of the Neolithic settlements. In the Neolithic period our region had already been densely populated. The climate became more stable. People at that time settled on the banks of the numerous rivers (the Klyazma, the Kamenka, the Koloksha) and lakes.

In the Early Neolithic period people already learned to make **modeled** clay pottery and decorate it with wave and **indented** ornaments. At the places of the former settlements there were found numerous flint tools: polished axes with bored holes in them, knives, arrowheads and so on.

The Neolithic period is the time when the primitive society flourished. The clan communities were based on collective labour and collective ownership. Archaeologists and historians call that period “the Neolithic revolution”. Society makes a transition from consuming to producing economy, that is, from hunting and eatable plants gathering to earth tilling and breeding cattle. In the Vladimir region this process took place in the Bronze period.

The Bronze period began in the III millennium BC. One of the most famous archaeological sites dating back to the Bronze period is the site at Volosovo village near Murom. Its peculiarity allowed archaeologists to distinguish a specific Volosovo archaeological culture. Primitive Volosovo dwellers had mastered a specific and superb technique of making flint tools: **daggers**, arrowheads and darts, polished fluting **gouges**, **addices** (adzes), scrapers, etc.

Things typical for Volosovo culture were big sites with spacious earth-houses (dig-outs) and clay pots with stamped ornaments. Volosovo dwellers remained fishers and hunters during the whole second millennium BC.

In the first half of the second millennium new tribes that were quite different from their predecessors came to the area between the Klyazma and the Oka Rivers. According to the name of the village – Fatyanovo, where the first **burial ground** was found, they became known as the Fatyanovo culture tribes. Chief monuments are the numerous burial grounds representing **clan cemeteries** usually located on the top of the hills. There are dozens of such burial grounds in the Vladimir region but all of them haven't been studied well. The tribes inhabited a very large territory from the Baltic Sea area up to the Volga and the Kama.

The Fatyanovo culture tribes were very different from their neighbours. In their graves, as a rule, archaeologists find many various things: round clay pots richly decorated with stamped ornaments made with

the help of ropes and stamps, many arms including stone, copper and bronze axes, knives. The main occupation of the Fatyanovo culture tribes was **cattle-breeding**. They bred different animals (it can be proved by various animal bones found in the burial grounds) sheep, goats, pigs, cows and horses. These tribes possibly had some primitive forms of **earth-tilling** and metallurgy.

Their society social structure represented the transition from the matriarchal to patriarchal society.

When the Fatyanovo culture tribes buried their dead, they put arms with them into the grave. This rite testifies to the fact that there was a necessity for these tribes to defend their territory. Very likely they were finally assimilated by the numerous people living in the forest zone or were **exterminated** by some coming tribes.

In the first millennium BC and in the first millennium AD, that is for a millennium and a half a large group of tribes had been living on the territory of our region. Archaeologists named them the Dyakovo culture tribes after the village of Dyakovo near Moscow where the traces of the ancient settlement were found. It was the Early Iron Age. These tribes inhabited the vast territory reaching the upper flow of the Volga, the Oka and Valday hills.

There are numerous of archaeological monuments of the Dyakovo culture in the Vladimir region. The Dyakovo culture hillforts are the monuments of the pre-Slavonic culture (Pirrovy Gorodishchi and Tarkhanovskoye Gorodishche in the Vyazniky district, Lysaya Gora in the town of Gorokhovets suburb and others). The Dyakovo settlements were situated as a rule on the top of the river **promontories** with very steep slopes. The settlements were fortified with several rows of **ramparts** and **moats**.

The Dyakovo culture grew on the basis of the culture of the settlements having clay pottery made by hand without **potter's wheel** and flint tools. The main occupation of the Dyakovo tribes was cattle-breeding. They bred cattle, sheep and goats (big-horned cattle and small-horned cattle), pigs. The **slash-and-burn** earth-tilling was gradually substituted by the primitive **hoe** earth-tilling.



The Dyakovo culture people were familiar with metallurgy and knew various methods of metal working: **casting**, **chasing** and **forging**. Archaeologists found only settlements and no burial grounds. Thus the lack of human remains makes it difficult to determine the ethnic belonging of the Dyakovo people. But similar jewelry found later on in hillforts of the Finno-Ugrians (the Muroma and Merya) lets us make a conclusion that the Dyakovo tribes were the ancestors of the eastern group of the Finno-Ugrian tribes of the Muroma and Merya. It is quite probable that their ancestors as well were not so numerous Gorodets tribes who also lived on the territory of the region in the Early Iron Age period.

The Bronze and the Early Iron Age sites are represented in the region by the well-studied settlements and burial grounds at the village of Shishovo (now the territory of the town of Kovrov), the village of Borisogleb (the Murom district), Pirrovy Gorodishchi (the Vyazniky district) and so on.

For thousands of years the ethnic composition of the ancient population of the region had been changing. Archaeology has no trustworthy information about it. But without any doubt in the Early Iron Age period our region was inhabited by the ancestors of the Finno-Ugrians referred to in the Russian chronicles as the Mordva, Muroma and Vyes.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1) modeled clay pottery;    | a) животноводство;         |
| 2) flint tools;             | b) собирательство;         |
| 3) primitive society;       | c) одомашненное животное;  |
| 4) consuming economy;       | d) лепная глиняная посуда; |
| 5) polished fluting gouges; | e) стадо оленей;           |
| 6) trustworthy information; | f) предок;                 |
| 7) earth-house;             | g) коллективный труд;      |
| 8) gathering;               | h) первобытное общество;   |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 9) animal husbandry;                     | i) сосуды из глины,<br>украшенные оттисками<br>штампов; |
| 10) blood relationship;                  | j) методы обработки металла;                            |
| 11) patriarchal society;                 | к) достоверные сведения;                                |
| 12) hillfort;                            | l) кровное родство;                                     |
| 13) domesticated animal;                 | м) землянка;  |
| 14) clay pots with stamped<br>ornaments; | н) кремниевые орудия;                                   |
| 15) herd of reindeer;                    | о) потребительское хозяйство                            |
| 16) collective labour;                   | р) полированные желобчатые<br>долота;                   |
| 17) ancestor;                            | q) городище;  |
| 18) methods of metal working.            | г) патриархальное общество.                             |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. В нашем крае обнаружено несколько десятков поселений вре-  
мен неолита.

2. Люди выбирали для поселений невысокие берега многочислен-  
ных рек (Клязьмы, Каменки, Колокши), а также озер.

3. Время неолита – расцвет первобытного родоплеменного строя.

4. Общество совершает переход от потребительского хозяйства к  
производящему, т. е. от охоты и собирательства к земледелию и ското-  
водству.

5. Одним из ярких памятников, относящихся к периоду бронзо-  
вого века, является стоянка у села Волосово недалеко от Муром.

6. Волосовцы обладали своеобразными и великолепными по тех-  
нике изготовления кремниевыми орудиями: кинжалами, наконечни-  
ками для стрел и дротиков, полированными желобчатыми долотами,  
теслами, скребками и т. д.

7. Племена фатьяновской культуры отличались от соседнего по-  
селения ярко выраженными особенностями.

8. Возможно, у этих племен были развиты примитивные формы земледелия и металлургия.

9. На Владимирской земле довольно много памятников дьяковской культуры.

10. Дьяковские поселения располагались, как правило, на высоких береговых мысах с крутыми склонами.

11. Дьяковцы вполне освоили металлургическое производство, были знакомы со всеми приемами обработки металлов: литьем, чеканкой, кузнечным способом.

12. На протяжении тысячелетий менялся этнический состав древних жителей края.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Since the Late Stone Age our region had not been ... for a long period of time.

a) invaded;                      b) uninhabited;                      c) explored.

2. At that time a primitive man made one of his greatest inventions, a ... , which gave hunting a completely new scope.

a) gouge;                      b) addice;                      c) bow.

3. The time was also ripe for the development of ... , the source of which was the taming of wounded animals or their offspring.

a) animal husbandry;   b) grain husbandry;   c) dairy husbandry.

4. The new organization, based on ... , was the matriarchal clan, the most ancient form of the clan system.

a) justice and equity;   b) common interests;   c) blood relationship.

5. In the Early Neolithic period at the places of the former settlements there were found numerous ... tools: polished axes with bored holes in them, knives, arrow heads and so on.

a) flint;                      b) clay;                      c) porcelain.

6. In the Vladimir region society makes a transition from the consuming to producing economy in the ... .

a) Iron Age period;   b) Stone Age period;   c) Bronze Age period.

7. Volosovo dwellers were ... during the whole second millennium BC.

a) craftsmen;      b) fishers and hunters;      c) blacksmiths.

8. Chief monuments of the Fatyanovo culture are the numerous burial grounds representing clan cemeteries usually located ... .

a) on banks of the rivers; b) on the top of the hills;      c) in forests.

9. When the Fatyanovo culture tribes buried their dead, they put ... with them into the grave which testifies to the fact that there was a necessity for these tribes to defend their territory.

a) tools;                      b) amulets;                      c) arms.

10. The main occupation of the Dyakovo tribes was ... .

a) cattle-breeding;      b) hunting;                      c) gathering.

11. In the Early Iron Age period our region was inhabited by the ... of the Finno-Ugrians referred to in the Russian chronicles as the Mordva, Muroma and Vyes.

a) descendants;              b) ancestors;                      c) tribes.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below.***

1. When the Ice Age was over, big animals such as mammoths appeared.

2. The Mesolithic hunters had been living for a long time in one place.

3. The archaeological finds on the Mesolithic sites in the region are mainly flint arrowheads, axes, scrapers and other tools, unlike paleolithic tools they are characterized by unsophisticated finish.

4. Traces of the few Neolithic settlements were found in the Vladimir region.

5. In the Early Neolithic period people already learned to make ceramic pottery and decorate it with wave and indented ornaments.

6. The clan communities were based on individual labour and ownership.

7. Things typical for Volosovo culture were big sites with small earth-houses (dig-outs) and clay pots with stamped ornaments.

8. In the first half of the second millennium new tribes that were not different from their predecessors came to the area between the Klyazma and the Oka.

9. The social structure of the Fatyanovo culture represented the transition from the patriarchal to matriarchal society.

10. The Dyakovo settlements were fortified with palisade.

11. The Dyakovo culture grew on the basis of the culture of the settlements having clay pottery made with potter's wheel and flint tools.

12. The Dyakovo culture people were not familiar with metallurgy.

13. Archaeologists found settlements and burial grounds of the Dyakovo culture.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. What impact did the climate change have on the environment?
2. What was one of the greatest inventions that a primitive man made?
3. What form of social organization was there in the Mesolithic period?
4. Where did people settle in the Neolithic period?
5. What was the clan community based on?
6. What does the term "Neolithic revolution" mean?
7. What was the Volosovo culture characterized by?
8. What were the chief monuments of the Fatyanovo culture tribes?
9. How did the Fatyanovo culture tribes differ from their neighbours?
10. What does the rite to put arms into a grave testify to?
11. How were the Dyakovo settlements fortified?
12. What were the occupations of the Dyakovo tribes?

***Task 7. Read the definitions and guess the correct word.***

1. A site that is being or has been excavated.
2. Belonging to the very distant past and no longer in existence.

3. A prehistoric period when weapons and tools were made of stone or of organic materials such as bone, wood, or horn.

4. A prehistoric period that followed the Stone Age and preceded the Iron Age, when weapons and tools were made of bronze rather than stone.

5. A person who studies human history and prehistory through the excavation of sites and the analysis of artefacts and other physical remains.

6. A place, typically one which has previously been uninhabited, where people establish a community.

7. Relating to or denoting a form of social organization in which a woman is the head.

8. A social division in a traditional society consisting of families or communities linked by social, economic, religious, or blood ties, with a common culture and dialect, typically having a recognized leader.

9. Relating to or denoting a system of society or government controlled by men.

10. The ideas, customs, and social behavior of a particular people or society.

11. A good or valuable thing or a special person that has been discovered.

12. Objects that are made out of clay by hand.

13. The act of putting a dead body into the ground, or the ceremony performed when this is done.

14. Large farm animals kept for their milk or meat; cows and bulls.

15. A house or place to live in.

***Task 8. Tell about the main tribes inhabiting the Vladimir region in the periods of ancient history.***

UNIT 2  
NORTH-EASTERN RUSSIA IN THE 8<sup>TH</sup> – FIRST HALF  
OF THE 12<sup>TH</sup> CENTURY

***Lesson 1. Nature and Climatic Peculiarities of Meshchora  
and Opolye. The Finno-Ugrian Population of the Vladimir Land.  
Merya and Muroma Settlements***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| 1) weed            | ❖ водоросли                                   |
| 2) swamp           | ❖ болото                                      |
| 3) hazel           | ❖ орешник                                     |
| 4) linden-tree     | ❖ липа  |
| 5) scarcity        | ❖ нехватка                                    |
| 6) gusty           | ❖ порывистый                                  |
| 7) cleft           | ❖ трещина, расщелина                          |
| 8) boggy           | ❖ болотистый                                  |
| 9) hearth          | ❖ очаг  |
| 10) float          | ❖ поплавок                                    |
| 11) sinker         | ❖ грузило                                     |
| 12) sheat-fish     | ❖ сом   |
| 13) pike-perch     | ❖ судак                                       |
| 14) bream          | ❖ лещ   |
| 15) to spin        | ❖ прясть                                      |
| 16) to weave       | ❖ ткать                                       |
| 17) blacksmith     | ❖ кузнец                                      |
| 18) plough         | ❖ плуг  |
| 19) foundry worker | ❖ литейщик                                    |
| 20) barrow         | ❖ курган                                      |
| 21) felt-making    | ❖ изготовление валяльно-<br>войлочных изделий |
| 22) carpentry      | ❖ плотницкое дело                             |

The Old Russian chronicles are the first written records of our region. They and archaeology are the main sources of knowledge about the events of the 11<sup>th</sup> – 12<sup>th</sup> centuries.

By that period the modern landscape of the region had already formed. As to its natural conditions the Vladimir land is divided into two different parts: Meshchora and Opolye. The natural boundaries of the Vladimir Opolye are the Klyazma River in the south, the Nerl River in the east and the hills in the north and west. On the territory of Opolye such rivers as the Rpen, Koloksha, Peksha, Seleksha, Skomyanka and some others flow. There are many lakes grown with **weeds** and **swamps** (e. g. the big Berendei swamp on the right bank of the river Nerl).

The soils of Opolye are fertile, which is proved by trees growing there: oaks, elms, **hazel and linden-trees**, which usually don't grow on bad soils. In Opolye **scarcity** of woods, strong and **gusty** winds make heat in summer and frost in winter more intense. In the long periods of dry and hot weather in summer, the upper layer of soil cracks, forming almost one meter deep vertical **clefts**, while the ground surface forms dense and hard crust impenetrable neither for water nor for plants. During the long drought such soil becomes very hard and unsuitable for cultivation, the heavy soil rocks need crashing with some heavy tools, that is a labour consuming and long process.

Meshchora is a vast and **boggy** plain between the Oka, Klyazma, Moskva, Kolp and Sudogda Rivers. The whole area has plenty of ground water. There are many forests. Facilitated by the natural conditions the process of settlement and developing of this area was quite different (in comparison with Opolye).

The vast area between the Oka and the Volga was inhabited by *the Finno-Ugrian tribes – Merya, Muroma and Meshchora*. The settlements of these tribes were near the rivers. They lived in big houses with high-pitched roofs, earth floors slightly deepened into the ground and **hearths** made of big stones plastered with clay. The houses had no chimneys and when the hearths were heated the smoke went out of the door. Later on instead of big houses small houses appeared (10 × 12 m).



The main occupations of Merya and Muroma were cattle-breeding, fishing, hunting and to a lesser degree earth-tilling. In the places of their settlements archaeologists find numerous animal bones, the greater part of which is the bones of domestic animals. The digs on the places of these settlements bring lots of things connected with fishing: iron fishing hooks, **floats, sinkers** for fishing nets and numerous fish bones of **piques, sheat-fish, pike-perch** (zander), **breams**, etc. Numerous finds of arrowheads, including those with dull tips for fur-bearing animals, testify about hunting. Earth-tilling was not very important.

The Finno-Ugrian tribes knew how **to spin, weave** and work with wood and bone. They also knew pottery, but they had no potter's wheel, that's why the walls of their pot were handmade and very thick. The **blacksmith's** craft development is proved by the finds of numerous iron axes, knives, spear- and arrowheads and other things.

Merya settlements in the Vladimir land dating back to the Dyakovo or the Early Iron Age period include a hillfort at the village of Yakimanskoye in the Suzdal district, a hillfort at Tenki Village not far from Yuriev-Polsky, a hillfort at the village of Novlyanovo in the Gus-Khrustalny district. Merya settlements were as a rule on the banks of the rivers. They were big clan settlements without rampart and moat fortifications. They built log houses slightly deepened into the ground. The floor was made of earth; the hearth was of big stones plastered with clay. The houses had no chimneys. The main occupations of the tribes were cattle-breeding, hunting, hoe earth-tilling. By the end of the first millennium AD they began using a **plough**, and earth-tilling became a main occupation. Metallurgy was a trade of special craftsmen: blacksmiths and **foundry workers**. They made agricultural tools, ornaments, etc.

By the end of the first millennium AD instead of clan community the territorial community appeared, there was no equality in the society, and it is possible to distinguish between the burials of the rich and the poor. The evidence of the community breaking up and individual families' separation from it is the fact that there were not only large communal houses, but also small houses with household structures, each built for an individual family.

Another tribe inhabiting the Vladimir land before the Slavonic coming was the Muroma tribe mentioned in The Tale of Bygone Years. The known archaeological monuments associated with Muroma are not so numerous. All of them are in the low flow of the Oka within the territory of the present-day Murom. The traces of Muroma settlements were found on the slopes of Voevodova and Bogatyreva Hills, on the bank of the Oka at the church of Nicola Naberezhny, in the southern suburb (selishche (settlement) Pyatnitskoye).

The Muroma burial grounds are of the great interest. As well as Merya burial grounds they have no **barrows**. The first burial ground was discovered in Murom in the ravine during the clay quarrying. Then one more burial ground was found in 20 km from the town at Podbolotnya Village, it was Malyshevo burial ground. According to the time they were dated by, it was established that Muroma lived in the Vladimir land in the 7<sup>th</sup> – 10<sup>th</sup> centuries AD.

The main occupation of Muroma was cattle-breeding. Earth-tilling, most likely it was slash-and-burn one, producing grain and fishing, were just a help. Cattle-breeding gave meat and raw materials for various crafts: leather-dressing, wool-spinning, **felt-making**, footwear-sowing. Other crafts, such as pottery, **carpentry**, iron-melting, jewelry were also well-developed. The ornaments decorating their houses and cloths were real masterpieces of art striking us with their beauty and exquisiteness.

The culture of Muroma is very close to the culture of Merya and to that of the modern Mordva and Udmurts.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) boundary;         | a) гончарное дело;      |
| 2) labour consuming; | b) укрепление;          |
| 3) chimney;          | c) ландшафт;            |
| 4) drought;          | d) вал;                 |
| 5) pottery;          | e) мотыжное земледелие; |
| 6) hillfort;         | f) родовая община;      |

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 7) chronicle;                     | g) могильник;            |
| 8) fortification;                 | h) подсечное земледелие; |
| 9) hoe earth-tilling;             | i) выделывание кожи;     |
| 10) burial ground;                | j) граница;              |
| 11) slash-and-burn earth-tilling; | k) городище;             |
| 12) leather-dressing;             | l) непроницаемый;        |
| 13) fertile;                      | m) ювелирное искусство;  |
| 14) exquisiteness;                | n) плодородный;          |
| 15) jewelry;                      | o) изысканность;         |
| 16) landscape;                    | p) дымоход;              |
| 17) clan community;               | q) трудозатратный;       |
| 18) moat;                         | r) засуха;               |
| 19) rampart;                      | s) летопись;             |
| 20) impenetrable.                 | t) ров.                  |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. Первые письменные свидетельства о нашем крае содержат древнерусские летописи.

2. По природным условиям Владимирский край делится на две отличающиеся друг от друга части: Мещёру и Ополье.

3. В опольной стороне чаще бывают порывистые и сильные ветры, летом усиливающие жару и сухость, а зимой – холод.

4. Мещёра – обширная болотистая равнина между реками Ока, Клязьма, Москва, Колпь, Судогда.

5. Огромное пространство Волго-Окского междуречья было заселено финно-угорскими племенами: меря, мурома, мещёра.

6. У финно-угорских племен было развито прядение, ткачество, обработка дерева и кости.

7. К концу I тысячелетия н. э. на смену родовой общине пришла территориальная, в общинах уже не было равенства, заметно выделялись группы погребений бедняков и богачей.

8. Дома строили деревянные, бревенчатые, слегка углубленные в землю.

9. Металлургия давно стала делом специальных мастеров – кузнецов и литейщиков, которые изготавливали земледельческие орудия, украшения и др.

10. Большим интересом представляют муромские могильники.

11. Большим подспорьем были земледелие, скорее всего, подсечное, дававшее зерновые продукты, и рыбная ловля.

12. Свою одежду и жилища они украшали настоящими произведениями искусства, поражающими изысканностью и красотой.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Meshchora is a ... plain between the Oka, Klyazma, Moskva, Kolp and Sudogda Rivers.

a) vast and boggy;      b) coastal;      c) small.

2. The vast area between the Oka and the Volga was inhabited by the ... tribes.

a) Volga Bulgars;      b) Khazar;      c) Finno-Ugrian

3. The settlements of Merya, Muroma, and Meshchora were near the ... .

a) forests;      b) rivers;      c) mountains.

4. They lived in big houses with high-pitched roofs, ... floors slightly deepened into the ground and hearths made of big stones plastered with clay.

a) wooden;      b) earth;      c) straw.

5. The main occupations of Merya and Muroma were cattle-breeding, fishing, hunting and to a lesser degree ... .

a) earth-tilling;      b) beekeeping;      c) trade.

6. In the places of their settlements archaeologists find numerous animal bones the greater part of which is the bones of ... animals.

a) wild;      b) rare;      c) domestic.

7. The first Merya burial ground was discovered in ... in the ravine during the clay quarrying, then one more burial ground was found in 20 km from the town at Podbolotnya Village, it was Malyshevo burial ground.

a) Yuriev-Polsky;      b) Murom;      c) Suzdal.

8. By the end of the ... instead of clan community the territorial community appeared, there was no equality in the society, and it is possible to distinguish between the burials of the rich and the poor.

- a) first millennium BC;
- b) second millennium AD;
- c) first millennium AD.

9. The Muroma ... are of the great interest.

- a) burial grounds;
- b) houses;
- c) occupations.

10. The ... craft development is proved by the finds of numerous iron axes, knives, spear- and arrowheads and other things.

- a) carpenter's;
- b) potter's;
- c) blacksmith's.

11. Numerous finds of arrowheads, including those with dull tips for fur-bearing animals, testify about ... .

- a) weaving;
- b) hunting;
- c) cattle-breeding.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. As to its natural conditions the Vladimir land is divided into three different parts.

2. The Old Russian chronicles are the first oral records of our region.

3. The soils of Opolye are infertile.

4. In Opolye, with its abundance of woods, strong and gusty winds usually blow.

5. The houses of the Finno-Ugrian tribes had chimneys.

6. The Finno-Ugrian tribes didn't know how to spin, weave and work with wood and bone.

7. Merya settlements were big clan settlements with rampart and moat fortifications.

8. They built stone houses slightly deepened into the ground.

9. Metallurgy was a trade of special craftsmen: blacksmiths and foundry workers.

10. The evidence of the community breaking up and individual families' separation from it is the fact that there were only large communal houses.

11. The known archaeological monuments associated with Muroma are numerous.

12. The Muroma and Merya burial grounds have barrows.

13. The first Muroma burial ground was discovered in Murom in the ravine during mining.

14. The main occupation of Muroma was hunting.

15. The culture of Muroma is very different from the culture of Merya.

***Task 6. Read the definitions and guess the correct word.***

1. A fort built on a hill, in particular an area on a hilltop enclosed by a system of defensive banks and ditches, as used by Iron Age peoples in north-western Europe.

2. A close-knit group of interrelated families.

3. A defensive or protective barrier.

4. A defensive wall or other reinforcement built to strengthen a place against attack.

5. A group of people living in the same place or having a particular characteristic in common.

6. An ancient burial mound.

7. The activity or occupation of making or repairing things in wood.

8. The craft or profession of making pottery.

9. Large animals with horns and hoofs, domesticated for meat or milk.

***Task 7. Answer the questions.***

1. What are the main sources of knowledge about the events of the 11<sup>th</sup> – 12<sup>th</sup> centuries?

2. What parts was the Vladimir land divided into?

3. What were the natural boundaries of the Vladimir Opolye?

4. What were the natural boundaries of Meshora?
5. What is the difference between natural conditions of Meshora and Opolye?
6. Where were the settlements of the Finno-Ugrian tribes situated?
7. What kind of houses did they live in?
8. What were the main occupations of Merya and Muroma?
9. When did the territorial community appear?
10. What testified to the clan community breaking up?
11. Where were the burial grounds of Muroma discovered?
12. Did the Muroma burial grounds have barrows?

***Task 8. Describe nature and climatic peculiarities of the region and tell about Muroma and Merya settlements.***

## ***Lesson 2. The Finno-Ugrian Tribe Meshchora***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) conformity	❖ соответствие
2) precaution	❖ осторожность
3) digging	❖ земляные работы, раскоп
4) mound	❖ курган
5) origin	❖ происхождение
6) to hollow	❖ выдолбить, сделать вогнутым
7) birch bark	❖ береста
8) bast	❖ луб
9) tomb	❖ гробница
10) sacrifice hole	❖ жертвенная яма
11) coffin	❖ гроб
12) to exclude	❖ исключать
13) tributary	❖ приток
14) tenant	❖ принцип, убеждение, установка

According to the archaeological and comparatively late written sources the basins of the Gus and the Kolp Rivers were inhabited by one more Finno-Ugrian tribe – Meshchora. Among the tribe unions in the Volga and the Oka area Meshchora is the most mysterious and less documented with historical and archaeological data. The issue of the ethnic belonging and the settlement area of medieval Meshchora is very complex.

The lack of the strict **conformity** of Meshchora ethnic name with a certain population group due to scarcity of historical sources makes scientists consider the issue of the legendary Meshchora with a great **precaution**. Nevertheless research in this area gives real and interesting results. The area of Meshchora settlement we are looking for lies between the land of Muroma and Mordva. On the whole that area corresponds to the Meshchora Lowland occupying the left bank of the Oka River.

What was that Meshchora described in the chronicles? Very slightly studied archaeological monuments from the second millennium AD in the Meshchora land help solve this problem.

The archaeological study of the monuments in the Meshchora Lowland was limited with the **digging** of the two cemeteries having no **mounds**. First in the 19<sup>th</sup> – 20<sup>th</sup> centuries at Zakolpye Village twenty burials were excavated. The second group consisted of barrow burial of the Finno-Ugrian **origin**. The ground burial layout gives the idea of the traditional system of the Meshchora Lowland settlement which hasn't changed for centuries and preserved up to nowadays. The monuments are located on the flat sandy hills – islands in the boggy plains – or close to the low river bank. Very scarce, scattered on the large territory Finnish villages were not densely populated. Their population consisted of 4 – 8 grown-up people. Unlike their neighbours Meshchora had no big clan centers with the densely populated neighborhoods.

In the ground burials there are the burial of not cremated remains. The deceased were buried in the wooden coffins made of **hollowed** logs. Sometimes they were covered with the **birch bark** ribbons and birch bark and **bast** were laid in the **tombs**. Alongside with the westward head direction of the buried people the Finno-Ugrians burials where the heads of the buried people are turned to the north or to the south are also found. The peculiarity



of the Meshchora cemeteries are the **sacrifice holes** with the traces of fire and animal bones among the graves, which proves that cattle-breeding was the basis of house-keeping.

The barrow burial grounds were also on sandy hills at the river banks. The deceased were buried in the hollowed log **coffins** or wrapped in birch bark. The heads of the buried people were turned either westward or north- and southward.

The Meshchora antiquities totally lack all the ethnic distinguishing elements characteristic for Merya in the 10<sup>th</sup> – 11<sup>th</sup> centuries. The complete set of Meshchora woman decorations differs significantly from the wholly metal decorations of a Muroma woman and its traditional elements for the funeral dress of the Mordva tribes. Meshchora was not just one of the ancient tribes inhabiting the Volga area, it was a peculiar ethnic entity having passed its own way of independent development, which does not **exclude** its relations with Mordva and Muroma and other tribes inhabiting the Oka River area.

The trade was also one of the local people's occupations. The Oka, the Klyazma and their **tributaries** were also the popular trade routes. The numerous Western and Arabic coins found in the area are the evidence of the trade links both with the eastern and western countries.

Archaeologists judge about the religious beliefs (**tenets**) of the Finno-Ugrian tribes according to different figurines of animals and idols in the shape of people's figures.

One can come across small sculptures of horses, birds and snakes that were amulets or talismans defending people from the evil forces. According to the beliefs of Merya people a bear was a protector of a house and a hearth. The amulets made of bears' teeth and paws are often found during the archaeological excavations.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

1) clan center;

a) загадочный;

2) flat sandy hills;

b) происхождение;

- |                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 3) mysterious;                     | c) курганное захоронение;        |
| 4) densely populated;              | d) погребальный костюм;          |
| 5) evidence;                       | e) религиозные верования;        |
| 6) ethnic distinguishing elements; | f) родоплеменной центр;          |
| 7) cemetery;                       | g) торговый путь;                |
| 8) funeral dress;                  | h) плоские песчаные всхолмления; |
| 9) barrow burial;                  | i) плотно населенный;            |
| 10) trade route;                   | j) этноопределяющие элементы;    |
| 11) origin;                        | k) кладбище;                     |
| 12) religious beliefs.             | l) свидетельство.                |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. Среди племенных образований Волго-Окского междуречья Мещёра наиболее загадочна и менее всего представлена в историко-археологических данных.

2. Археологические исследования памятников Мещёрской низменности ограничены раскопками двух бескурганных кладбищ.

3. На грунтовых могильниках были обнаружены только погребения несожженных тел.

4. Наряду с положением погребенных головой к западу отмечено традиционное для финно-угров положение к северу или к югу.

5. Как и грунтовые кладбища Мещёрской низменности, курганные кладбища располагались на песчаных всхолмлениях недалеко от побережий рек.

6. Редкие и рассеянные на большой территории финские деревни были малолюдными.

7. Мещёра была не просто одним из древних народов Поволжья, она составляла особое этническое образование, прошедшее самостоятельный путь развития.

8. Древнему населению края была известна и торговля.

9. О религиозных верованиях финских племен можно судить по находкам изваяний животных и идолов, выполненных в виде человеческих фигурок.

10. Амулеты из зубов медведя и даже его лапы – частые предметы в мерянских захоронениях.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Among the tribe unions in the Volga and the Oka area Meshchora is the most ... and less documented with historical and archaeological data.

a) numerous;                      b) developed;                      c) mysterious.

2. The issue of the ethnic belonging and the settlement area of medieval Meshchora is ... .

a) classified;                      b) simple;                      c) very complex.

3. The area of Meshchora settlement we are looking for lies between the land of ... and Mordva.

a) Merya;                      b) Mordva;                      c) Muroma.

4. First in the 19<sup>th</sup> – 20<sup>th</sup> centuries at Zakolpye Village ... burials were excavated.

a) twenty;                      b) thirty;                      c) ten.

5. The peculiarity of the Meshchora cemetery is ... .

a) a mound;                      b) a sacrifice hole;                      c) its location.

6. The numerous Western and Arabic ... found in the area are the evidence of the trade links both with the eastern and western countries.

a) coins;                      b) tools;                      c) amulets.

7. According to the beliefs of Merya people a ... was a protector of a house and a hearth.

a) elk;                      b) cow;                      c) bear.

8. The complete set of Meshchora woman decorations differs significantly from the wholly metal decorations of a Muroma woman and its traditional elements for the funeral ... of the Mordva tribes.

a) grave goods;                      b) rite;                      c) dress.

9. The barrow burial grounds were also on sandy hills ... .

a) at the river banks;                      b) in forests;                      c) in the lowland.

10. The population of the Finnish villages consisted of ... grown-up people.

a) 20 – 25;

b) 30 – 40;

c) 4 – 8.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. According to the archaeological and comparatively late written sources the basins of the Gus and the Nerl Rivers were inhabited by one more Finno-Ugrian tribe – Meshchora.

2. On the whole the area of Meshchora settlement corresponds to the Meshchora Lowland occupying the left bank of the Sudogda River.

3. The ground burial layout gives the idea of the traditional system of the Meshchora Lowland settlement which hasn't preserved up to nowadays.

4. Very scarce, scattered on the large territory Finnish villages were densely populated.

5. Unlike their neighbours Meshchora had big clan centers without densely populated neighborhoods.

6. The trade wasn't one of the local people's occupations.

7. Cattle-breeding wasn't the basis of house-keeping in Meshchora settlement.

8. The deceased were buried in the hollowed log coffins or wrapped in birch bark.

9. The Meshchora antiquities totally lack all the territorial distinguishing elements characteristic for Merya in the 10<sup>th</sup> – 11<sup>th</sup> centuries.

10. Very slightly studied archaeological monuments from the first millennium AD in the Meshchora land help solve the problem of mysterious Meshchora described in the chronicles.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Why is Meschora the most mysterious Finno-Ugrian tribe?

2. What territory did the Meshchora settlement occupy?

3. How many cemeteries were studied by archeologists?

4. How many burials were excavated at Zakopye village?
5. What contributes to understanding the traditional system of the Meshora Lowland settlement?
6. Were Finish villages densely populated?
7. What burial traditions did Meshchora have?
8. What was the peculiarity of the Meshchora cemeteries?
9. How can you prove that Meshchora was not just one of the ancient tribes inhabiting the Volga area, but a peculiar ethnic entity having passed its own way of independent development?
10. Was trade one of the local people's occupations?
11. What religious beliefs did the Finno-Ugrian tribes have?
12. What amulets were often found during the archeological excavations?

***Task 7. Give a short summary of the text.***

### **Lesson 3. The Beginning of the Slavonic Colonization of North-Eastern Russia**

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1) to penetrate        | ❖ проникать                |
| 2) nomad               | ❖ кочевник                 |
| 3) the Hun invasion    | ❖ нашествие гуннов         |
| 4) peasant             | ❖ крестьянин               |
| 5) feudal exploitation | ❖ феодальная эксплуатация  |
| 6) to preserve         | ❖ сохранять                |
| 7) burial rite         | ❖ похоронный обряд         |
| 8) heterogeneity       | ❖ неоднородность           |
| 9) to distinguish      | ❖ различать                |
| 10) uprising           | ❖ восстание, волнение      |
| 11) emergence          | ❖ возникновение, появление |

At the end of the 8th – the beginning of the 9th centuries the Slavs started **to penetrate** the territory between the Oka and the Klyazma. They were the Vyatichi, the Smolensk Krivichi tribe and the Slovenes of the Novgorod area. This process of the Slav settlement and colonization of the territory was quite peaceful. The Slavs settled on the rivers. Fertile treeless lands of Opolye attracted their attention as well. There was a long and slow assimilation process of the Finno-Ugrian tribes by the Slavs. As a result of this process the Finno-Ugrian tribes were fully assimilated by the Slavs who influenced their national type and the language. But the memory of the Finno-Ugrian tribes still lives on in the local geographic names of the rivers like the Klyazma, the Koloksha, the Peksha, the Vorsha; lakes; and ancient towns Murom, Suzdal, and Moskva.

In the later period the stream of the Slav colonization was growing. The main reason of this mass settlement to the north-eastern lands was growing raids of the **nomads** from the steppes on the lands of the Dnieper area.

The first small groups of the Slavs began to appear in the local land already in the 4<sup>th</sup> century after **the Hun invasion**. About the 9<sup>th</sup> century the mass migration of the Slavs to the north-eastern lands began. The Slavs came to the local lands inhabited by the Merya from the south, from Kiev, from the lands of the Smolensk Krivichi and the Slovenes of the Novgorod area and the land of Vyatichi.

This migration was due to feudal relations development in Russia. **Peasants** came here running away from the **feudal exploitation** and settled among the Merya people. In the 10<sup>th</sup> century Russian princes tried to spread here their influence and the period of the colonization of the local lands by the princes began. The Grand Princes of Kiev usually gave the local lands to their younger sons who founded in the local lands the first fortified towns with the courtyards of those princes.

When the Slavs came in the 9<sup>th</sup> – 10<sup>th</sup> centuries, that is, when the Slav colonization began, the Merya and Muroma did not disappear. There was the mutual penetration of the cultures, and it can be proved by the data of the archaeological excavations. In the later Slav settlements one can find the elements of the Merya cult borrowed from the native population. The Merya

**preserved** their customs and traditions e. g. **burial rites**. They continued to bury the dead in the ground burials without making any barrows. The deceased were either cremated or buried in the narrow graves.

The story of the Slav colonization of the north-eastern lands became known due to archaeological excavations. The Slav barrows are the cultural monuments. Different barrow shapes testify about the cultural **heterogeneity** of the Slav population coming to the local lands. There are very big barrows reaching 10 m. They are the barrows of the Novgorod Slovenes. And there are the oval and round barrows up to 12 – 15 m high. In such way the Smolensk Krivichi used to bury their dead.

The historians **distinguish** two waves of the Slav colonization: the first one was in the 9<sup>th</sup> – 11<sup>th</sup> centuries; the second – in the 11<sup>th</sup> – 13<sup>th</sup> centuries. The first wave of the Slav settlers had reached Suzdal Opolye with its fertile lands. As a result of the colonization of the local lands by the princes the first fortified towns appeared. In 862 Rostov the Great was founded, in the same year in the Laurentian Chronicle Murom was mentioned for the first time. The towns appeared first of all in places of the ancient local tribes settlements.

The Slavs relations with the native Finno-Ugrian population were peaceful as a rule. But there were some extraordinary situations. The chronicles say that when Vladimir Svyatoslavich put his younger son Gleb to Murom throne and his elder son Boris to Rostov throne, the Murom population did not accept the prince. The princely power was also opposed by the population of the Suzdal Opolye. The first reference of Suzdal in the chronicle in 1024 was connected with an **uprising**. The chronicler writes that Yaroslav the Wise came here with his men to suppress the uprising. By the 12<sup>th</sup> century significant changes took place in the Vladimir land. As a result of the second wave of the colonization the population of the territory increased. The population growth was first of all due to the bigger flow of settlers from other territories of the ancient Russian state especially from those territories which were exposed to frequent raids of nomads (Polovtsians and Pechenegs). The increase in population led to the **emergence** of new towns in the Rostov-Suzdal land.

**Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:**

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1) peaceful;                              | a) населять;                       |
| 2) mass settlement;                       | b) укрепленный город;              |
| 3) mass migration;                        | c) двор;                           |
| 4) to inhabit;                            | d) мирный;                         |
| 5) fortified town;                        | e) массовое расселение;            |
| 6) the Laurentian Chronicle;              | f) различать;                      |
| 7) mutual penetration<br>of the cultures; | g) взаимопроникновение<br>культур; |
| 8) ground burials;                        | h) археологические раскопки;       |
| 9) princely power;                        | i) Лаврентьевская летопись;        |
| 10) to distinguish;                       | j) чрезвычайные ситуации;          |
| 11) courtyard;                            | k) массовая миграция;              |
| 12) archaeological<br>excavations;        | l) грунтовые могилы;               |
| 13) extraordinary situations.             | m) княжеская власть.               |

**Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.**

1. На рубеже VIII – IX веков на территорию Междуречья началось проникновение славян, и прежде всего кривичей, вятичей и новгородских словен.

2. Славяне расселились сначала около рек, их внимание привлекали земли плодородного и безлесного Ополья.

3. В X веке свое влияние на этот край стремились распространить и русские князья, наступил период княжеской колонизации.

4. Когда в наш край в IX – X веках пришли славяне и началась славянская колонизация, меря и мурома не исчезли бесследно.

5. Меряне сохранили свои традиции, например обряд погребения: меряне продолжали хоронить своих соплеменников по старому обычаю в грунтовых могилах, т. е. не сооружая над ними никакой насыпи.



6. Формы надмогильных сооружений-курганов разнообразные, что говорит о неоднородности самого славянского населения, пришедшего в этот край.

7. Историки различают две волны славянской колонизации: первая – IX – начало XI века, вторая – начало XI – XIII век.

8. В результате княжеской колонизации появились первые укрепленные города.

9. Взаимоотношения славян с местным финно-угорским населением складывались в целом мирно.

10. В результате второй волны колонизации резко увеличилось население края.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. The Slavs settled ... .

a) in the mountains;    b) in the forests;    c) on the rivers.

2. There was a ... assimilation process of the Finno-Ugrian tribes by the Slavs.

a) long;    b) fast;    c) unpeaceful.

3. The first small groups of the Slavs began to appear in the local land already in the ... century.

a) 5<sup>th</sup>;    b) 4<sup>th</sup>;    c) 6<sup>th</sup>.

4. Peasants came to the local land running away from the ... and settled among the Merya people.

a) strife;    b) raiding;    c) feudal exploitation.

5. In the ... century Russian princes tried to spread here their influence and the period of the colonization of the local lands by the princes began.

a) 10<sup>th</sup>;    b) 12<sup>th</sup>;    c) 11<sup>th</sup>.

6. The Grand Princes of Kiev usually gave the local lands to their ... who founded in the local lands the first fortified towns with the courtyards of those princes.

a) younger brothers;    b) eldest sons;    c) younger sons.

7. The Merya ... their customs and traditions.  
 a) lost;                                      b) preserved;                                      c) forgot.
8. Different barrow shapes testify about the cultural ... of the Slav population coming to the local lands.  
 a) homogeneity;                                      b) identity;                                      c) heterogeneity.
9. As a result of the colonization of the local lands by the princes there appeared the first ... .  
 a) fortified towns;                                      b) hunter's camps;                                      c) settlements.
10. In 862 Rostov the Great was founded, in the same year in the Laurentian Chronicle ... was mentioned for the first time.  
 a) Yaroslavl;                                      b) Kideksha;                                      c) Murom.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. The process of the Slav settlement and colonization of the territory had a violent nature.
2. The story of the Slav colonization of the north-eastern lands became known due to anthropologists.
3. The Slavs came to the local lands inhabited by the Merya from the south, from Kiev, from the lands of the Smolensk Krivichi and the Slovenes of the Novgorod area and the land of Vyatichi.
4. The historians distinguish three waves of the Slav colonization.
5. The first reference of Suzdal in the chronicle in 1024 was connected with the raids of nomads.
6. When the Slav colonization began, the Marya and Muroma disappeared.
7. The scientists don't support the idea of the mutual penetration of the cultures during the Slav colonization of our land.
8. The chronicles say that when Vladimir Svyatoslavich put his younger son Gleb to Murom throne and his elder son Boris to Rostov throne, the Murom population accepted the prince.

9. As a result of the second wave of the colonization the population of the territory decreased.

10. The population growth led to the disappearance of new towns in the Rostov-Suzdal land.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. When did the Slavs start to penetrate the territory between the Oka and the Klyazma?

2. Was the process of the Slav settlement and colonization of the territory peaceful?

3. Where did the Slavs settle?

4. What was the main reason of the mass settlement to the north-eastern lands?

5. What was the main reason for peasants' migration?

6. When did the period of the local land colonization by princes begin?

7. Whom did the Grand Prince usually give the local lands to?

8. How was the mutual penetration of the cultures expressed?

9. How many waves of the Slav colonization did the historians distinguish?

10. What were the first fortified towns?

11. What places did the first towns appear in?

12. Was the princely power always accepted by the population?

13. What was the first reference of Suzdal in the chronicle connected with?

14. What significant changes took place in the Vladimir land as a result of the second wave of the colonization?

***Task 7. Be ready to speak on the Slavonic colonization of North-Eastern Russia.***

UNIT 3  
**THE ROSTOV AND SUZDAL LAND UNDER VLADIMIR  
MONOMAKH AND YURI DOLGORUKY**

***Lesson 1. The Princely Power Establishing in the North-East  
of Russia***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) tribute	❖ дань
2) oven	❖ печь
3) domestic utensils	❖ домашняя утварь
4) log hut	❖ изба
5) weaving	❖ ткачество
6) fabrics	❖ ткани
7) flax	❖ лен
8) hemp	❖ конопля
9) introduction of Christianity	❖ христианизация
10) baptizing	❖ крещение
11) paganism	❖ язычество
12) pagan priests (magi)	❖ волхвы
13) revolt	❖ бунт
14) bishop	❖ епископ
15) Orthodox Church	❖ православная церковь
16) tithe	❖ десятина
17) metayage	❖ оброк

In the 10<sup>th</sup> century the Vladimir land was included into the Old Russian State. The Kiev Prince Vladimir the Saint put his son Boris to the Rostov throne and his son Gleb to the Murom throne. The princely power establishing in the new lands did not introduce any significant changes in the life of its inhabitants. From time to time the princes made personal detours of cities and settlements, collecting a **tribute** (“polyudye”). Very often they charged gathering the tribute to the servants called “podyeznye”,

“ryadovichi” (contract laborers), “virniki” (collectors of bloodwite payments), “mechniki” (sword bearers). The points of tribute collecting were large settlements, community centers with churches and churchyards (pogosts), where collectors of the tribute had a special court yard.

Peasant villages were mostly small. Some of them contained one or three peasant households. A peasant dwelling, a log hut (izba), was put directly on the ground. There were no wooden floors. The third part of a log hut was occupied by a big **oven** built on rectangular log structures. The smoke went out through the door or a hole in the roof. Next to a log hut there were barns for drying sheaves and covered deep holes for grain. **Domestic utensils** were also very simple: manual millstones for grinding grain operated by women, wooden barrels, troughs, clay pots. **Log huts** were lit by means of wooden splits or oil-lamps. A usual occupation of women, especially in winter time, was **weaving**. In each log hut there was a weaving loom, a distaff, spindles with stone spindle whorls. **Fabrics** were woven from **flax, hemp**, wool. These fabrics were used by women to make clothes for all family members. Earth-tilling and cattle-breeding were men’s business.

The princely power establishing in the Rostov-Suzdal land went side by side with **the introduction of Christianity** among the local population. The **baptizing** of the local population was not an easy process. The local people were reluctant to give up their pagan rites and beliefs. The chronicles say that Prince Glebe’s arrival in Murom caused the protest of the local population. **Paganism** preserved for a long period of time both among the local population and among the coming Slavs. Vladimir Monomakh made his first travel from the south of Rus (from Pereslavl of Kiev) to Rostov in 1066, i. e., almost 80 years later after the adoption of Christianity in Russia. But in the woods funeral pyres still burned and pagans killed Kiev missionaries. The very fact that **pagan priests** headed hungry peasant **revolts** in 1024 and 1071 testifies to deep influence of pagan beliefs on the local population.

In large cities there were bishops who were in charge of the church affairs in dioceses. The first **bishop** in the Rostov-Suzdal land was Fyodor (Theodore) “a Greek by birth”. Under him in Rostov the first Christian

church, the Church of the Assumption, was built. However, the intrigues of the **magi** forced him to leave Rostov and come to Suzdal. It was right at the end of the 10<sup>th</sup> century. Bishop Fyodor lived in Suzdal for a long time and was buried there in the Nativity Cathedral. Bishop Fyodor's cause was continued by subsequent Rostov bishops.

**The Orthodox Church** enjoyed constant support and protection of Kiev and local princes. Princes gave the Church a **tithe** – the tenth part of the collected tribute and **metayage**. The church had its own court and the special legislation regulating the relations within families and the norms of people's behavior. In cities many churches were built, in these churches a service was conducted by priests and their assistants – deacons. It was conducted three times a day: matins, liturgy (mass), and vespers. On holidays especially solemn services were arranged, they were preceded by night services including vespers and matins. Church buildings rose above huts and palaces, creating architectural ensembles of the cities.

*Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:*

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1) introduce significant changes; | a) лучина;                        |
| 2) make personal detours;         | b) крещение;                      |
| 3) collect a tribute;             | c) оброк;                         |
| 4) peasant dwelling;              | d) собирать дань;                 |
| 5) wooden split;                  | e) христианизация;                |
| 6) weaving loom;                  | f) внести существенные изменения; |
| 7) distaff;                       | g) десятина;                      |
| 8) introduction of Christianity;  | h) церковные дела;                |
| 9) baptizing;                     | i) веретено;                      |
| 10) funeral pyre;                 | j) совершать личные объезды;      |
| 11) priest;                       | k) прялка;                        |
| 12) metayage;                     | l) язычник;                       |
| 13) tithe;                        | m) бочка;                         |

- |                     |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 14) church affairs; | n) епархия;             |
| 15) clay pot;       | o) хижина;              |
| 16) barrel;         | p) ткацкий станок;      |
| 17) diocese;        | q) погребальный костер; |
| 18) spindle;        | r) священник;           |
| 19) hut;            | s) жилище крестьянина;  |
| 20) pagan.          | t) глиняный горшок.     |

***Task 3. Consult the text and find the English equivalents of the following words and word combinations.***

Окняжение новых земель; собирать дань; селения крестьян; овины для сушки снопов; крытые глубокие ямы для жита; ручные жернова для размола зерна, на которых трудились женщины; деревянные бочки, корыта, глиняные горшки; лучина; ткацкий стан, прялка, веретена с каменными пряслицами; ткани изо льна, конопли, шерсти; языческие обряды и верования; пришлые славяне; принятие христианства на Руси; массовые голодные бунты крестьян; козни языческих волхвов; поддержка и покровительство киевского и местных князей; заутреня, обедня и вечерня; хижины и хоромы.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. The Kiev Prince Vladimir the Saint put his son Boris to the ... throne.

- a) Vladimir;                      b) Rostov;                      c) Murom.

2. The points of tribute collecting were large settlements, community centers with churches and churchyards, where collectors of the tribute had a special ... .

- a) palace;                      b) site;                      c) court yard.

3. Some villages contained ... peasant households.

- a) one or three;                      b) five or seven;                      c) ten or twelve.

4. In a peasant dwelling there were no wooden ... .

- a) windows;                      b) floors;                      c) doors.

5. Log huts were lit by means of ... .  
 a) oil-lamps;                      b) candles;                      c) hearths.
6. The local people were ... to give up their pagan rites and beliefs.  
 a) eager;                      b) reluctant;                      c) glad.
7. In large cities there were ... who were in charge of the church affairs in dioceses.  
 a) monks;                      b) deacons;                      c) bishops.
8. On holidays especially ... services were arranged.  
 a) spectacular;                      b) magnificent;                      c) solemn.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. In the 12<sup>th</sup> century the Vladimir land was included into the Old Russian State.
2. The princely power establishing in the new lands introduced many significant changes in the life of its inhabitants.
3. From time to time the princes made personal detours of cities and settlements, collecting a tribute (“polyudye”).
4. The points of tribute collecting were small settlements.
5. Peasant villages were mostly small.
6. The domestic utensils were very complicated.
7. In each log hut there was a sewing machine.
8. Earth-tilling and cattle-breeding were women’s business.
9. The princely power establishing in the Rostov-Suzdal land went side by side with the introduction of paganism among the local population.
10. The local people were reluctant to give up their pagan rites and beliefs.
11. The first bishop in the Rostov-Suzdal land was Fyodor (Theodore) “a Greek by birth”.
12. Under Fyodor in Rostov the first Christian church, the St. Trinity Church, was built.
13. The Orthodox Church enjoyed the constant support and protection of Kiev and local princes.



14. Princes gave the Church a tithe – the twentieth part of the collected tribute and metayage.

15. The service in churches was conducted two times a day.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. When was the Vladimir land included into the Old Russian State?
2. The princely power establishing in the new lands introduced significant changes in the life of its inhabitants, didn't it?
3. Was a peasant dwelling put directly on the ground or on the wooden floor?
4. Did the smoke go out of a log hut through the door or through the chimney?
5. What occupied the third part of a log hut?
6. What was the usual occupation of women in winter time?
7. What was men's business?
8. Was the baptizing of the local population an easy process?
9. Who headed hungry peasant revolts in 1024 and 1071?
10. Who was the first bishop of the Rostov-Suzdal land? When did he live in Suzdal?
11. What was a tithe?

***Task 7. Be ready to speak on the princely power establishing in the North-East of Russia.***

***Lesson 2. The Continuation of the Slav Colonization.  
Occupations of the Local Population***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| 1) earth-tilling       | ❖ земледелие     |
| 2) cattle-breeding     | ❖ скотоводство   |
| 3) vegetable gardening | ❖ огородничество |
| 4) fruit gardening     | ❖ садоводство    |

5) wild-hive beekeeping	❖ бортничество
6) wood-working craft	❖ деревообрабатывающее ремесло
7) pottery and ceramics	❖ гончарное дело
8) stonecutting	❖ камнетесное ремесло
9) blacksmith's craft	❖ кузнечное ремесло
10) armourer	❖ оружейник
11) helmet	❖ шлем
12) chain-mail	❖ кольчуга
13) battle-ax	❖ боевой топор
14) shield	❖ щит
15) jewelry-making	❖ ювелирное мастерство
16) spinning	❖ прядение
17) embroideress	❖ вышивальщица
18) leather manufacture	❖ кожевенное производство
19) bone carving	❖ косторезное мастерство

In the 12<sup>th</sup> century the Slav colonization went on. The settlers still came from two areas: from the northwest area from Novgorod the Great, and from the south, from “the Russian land” as Kiev and surrounding area were referred to at that time. As a result of immigrants’ inflow woods were cleared away for the plough land. Under influence of the Slavs in the economy of the natives based on cattle-breeding, hunting and fishing the value of earth-tilling grew. In turn, immigrants acquired economic experience of local cattle-breeders, hunters and fishers. Old towns grew; new towns, the centers of trade and crafts, appeared.

The development of the region resulted in the significant growth of the plough lands; especially in the fertile Opolye. **Earth-tilling** required hard work and persistence. But peasants were not always rewarded. There were often poor harvests because of adverse weather conditions.

In the peasant household **cattle breeding** was very important. They bred cows, sheep, goats, pigs and horses. In excavations archeologists always find iron scythes, which were used for making hay for domestic animals. Horses were bred for the use in the household (for work and transportation) and in the war.

In the 12<sup>th</sup> century they started **vegetable gardening**. The main working tool used for it was *ryltse* – a wooden spade having iron binding on the working edge. Such bindings are found in the excavations in Suzdal. On “the Golden Gates” of the Nativity Cathedral in Suzdal (a monument of the Russian applied arts of the beginning of the 13<sup>th</sup> century) there is the image of Adam, holding such a spade, accompanied with an inscription: “Adam was digging the earth with *ryltse*”.

**Fruit gardening** also originated in the 12<sup>th</sup> century. At that time, it was business of the townspeople. Legends inform of growing cherry orchards on the territory of the Vladimir-Suzdal principality since the 12<sup>th</sup> century.

The population of the Vladimir principality still pursued hunting, fishery and **wild-hive beekeeping**. During the excavations in Vladimir, Murom, Suzdal, Yaropolch Zalessky they found plenty of fishing iron hooks of different sizes, birch bark floats, clay sinkers for fishing nets, as well as bone needles for knitting fishing tackles.

In the 12<sup>th</sup> century in the towns of the Vladimir Rus there developed the same crafts which were also typical of the other territory of the Old Russian State.

The chronicles testify of the development of **wood-working crafts**. Archeologists in Vladimir, Suzdal, Murom and Yaropolch Zalessky found numerous wood-working tools.

One more ancient craft was **pottery and ceramics**. The evidence of their development in the area was the construction of the Assumption Cathedral of plinth-bricks in Suzdal by Vladimir Monomach at the end of 11<sup>th</sup> century. On the bank of the Kamenka River archaeologists found the remains of three kilns for burning plinths, in each kiln up to 5000 bricks could be burnt at a time. The flourishing of pottery and ceramics was connected with the manufacture of various glazed ceramic tiles and bricks. Glazed ceramic tiles were made of different sizes: from small ones, used for the decoration of cathedral walls, up to very large floor tiles (19 × 19 × 4 cm). For tile glazing red, dark blue, green, brown, black, yellow glazing was used.

In the middle of 12<sup>th</sup> century **stonecutting** originated. In towns, first of all in Vladimir, there were special groups of craftsmen cutting stone.

That's why it is not by chance that the Rostov and Suzdal boyars scornfully named the people of Vladimir their serfs "stone-cutters and carpenters". At the end of 1140s there appeared a team of stone-cutters in Suzdal. Probably this team consisted of the natives of the Galich land. They participated in the construction of the white-stone cathedrals in Pereslavl-Zalessky, Yuriev-Polsky, Suzdal and the country residence of Prince Yuri Dolgoruky Kideksha.

The **blacksmith's craft** was widely spread. In different places archeologists have found the remains of furnaces, blast hearths and numerous blacksmith's tools. During the excavations at Vyazniky pieces of marsh iron ore were found in the buildings of that time, which allows to conclude its local quarrying in the 12<sup>th</sup> century. The cross of the Assumption Cathedral and the cross of St. Demetrius Cathedral topped by a weather vane in the form of a copper pigeon are the real masterpieces of the blacksmith's art. The beautifully forged copper floors of the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir and the Nativity Cathedral in Suzdal are the outstanding pieces of the Vladimir coppersmiths' work.

**Armourers** constituted a special category of smiths. They made the **helmet** of Yaroslav Vsevolodovich. (It was found in 1808 not far from Yuriev-Polsky on the bank of the Koloksha River, where in 1216 there was the historical battle at the Lipitsa River, a tributary of the Koloksha. The owner of the helmet Prince Yaroslav Vsevolodovich, the father of Alexander Nevsky, was not successful in the battle and had to hide his helmet and his **chain-mail** and flee.) Now this helmet, the chain-mail as well as the **battle-ax** of Andrei Bogolyubsky are in the Armoury Chamber in Moscow. They are the remarkable samples of both smithcraft and jewelers' skills. Among the things done by the local armsmiths are chain-mails. Speaking about the arms done by the local armourers one should mention the huge crossbow whose 7 big arrows survive up to nowadays. The length of each arrow is 169 cm and its weight is about 2,5 kg. Among the local armourers there was a special group making **shields**. In the 12<sup>th</sup> century Russian smiths, including the Vladimir ones, acquired 16 various qualifications and were able to make up to 150 kinds of weapons of iron and steel.

**Jewelry-making** was also widely spread. In Vladimir, Suzdal and Yaropolch archaeologists found coppersmiths' workshops. For their work jewelers used up to 60 casting molds. Goldsmiths constituted a special group of jewelers. Archaeological finds testify to the diversity of the silver ornaments made by them in the techniques of gilding, engraving and enameling.

The Vladimir craftsmen were the first to use the techniques of fiery gilding and niello. A Russian goldsmith could draw a wire one kilometer long out of one gram of silver.

Weaving and **spinning** were spread all over the territory of the Vladimir principality. In many places archeologists find various fragments of cloth, felt, sacking, and cords. In the digs they find plenty of bone and bronze needles. Russian **embroideresses** knew up to 50 various stitches.

In a number of cities and settlements long since there was **leather manufacture**. The craftsmen manufactured yuft (Russian leather) and morocco which were used to manufacture boots. Rough leather went for the manufacture of belts, purses, shoes and other necessary things.

Local people also knew **bone carving**. During the excavations archaeologists find numerous bone items: needles, combs, arrowheads, piercers and buttons.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1) plough land;                | a) неблагоприятные погодные условия; |
| 2) cattle-breeding;            | b) арбалет;                          |
| 3) earth-tilling;              | c) кольчуга;                         |
| 4) poor harvest;               | d) вышивальщица;                     |
| 5) adverse weather conditions; | e) пастбище;                         |
| 6) excavations;                | f) сад;                              |
| 7) leather;                    | g) сафьян;                           |
| 8) scythe;                     | h) каменщик;                         |
| 9) helmet;                     | i) коса;                             |

- |                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 10) chain-mail;           | j) рыболовные снасти; |
| 11) vegetable-gardening;  | k) крючок;            |
| 12) fruit-gardening;      | l) оружейник;         |
| 13) embroideress;         | m) бортничество;      |
| 14) orchard;              | n) садоводство;       |
| 15) wild-hive beekeeping; | o) неурожай;          |
| 16) goldsmith;            | p) медник;            |
| 17) hook;                 | q) раскопки;          |
| 18) armourer;             | r) огородничество;    |
| 19) fishing tackles;      | s) скотоводство;      |
| 20) morocco;              | t) кожа;              |
| 21) pottery and ceramics; | u) кузнец;            |
| 22) coppersmith;          | v) златокузнец;       |
| 23) glazed ceramic tile;  | w) поливная плитка;   |
| 24) stone-cutter;         | x) гончарное дело;    |
| 25) blacksmith;           | y) земледелие;        |
| 26) crossbow.             | z) шлем.              |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. В XII веке продолжалась славянская колонизация.
2. Под воздействием славян в скотоводческо-промысловом хозяйстве аборигенов возрастало значение земледелия.
3. Освоение региона приводило к образованию значительных пахотных площадей, особенно в благодатном Ополье.
4. Археологи в раскопках повсеместно находят железные косы, которые использовались для заготовки сена для домашних животных.
5. Предания сообщают о разведении с XII века на территории княжества вишневых садов.
6. Летописи свидетельствуют о развитии деревообрабатывающих ремесел.
7. Еще одно не менее древнее ремесло – гончарное дело.
8. Расцвет гончарного ремесла был связан с производством различных видов поливных плиток и кирпичей.

9. В конце 40-х годов XII века появилась артель каменотесов в Суздале.

10. Образцы кузнечного мастерства – кресты Успенского собора и крест на Дмитриевском соборе, увенчанный фигуркой медного голубя-флюгера.

11. В числе изделий оружейников до нас дошли многочисленные кольчуги.

12. О разнообразии продукции владимирских ювелиров говорят находки серебряных украшений, выполненных в технике золочения, гравировки, зерни и эмалей.

13. Во Владимирском княжестве почти повсеместно было распространено ткачество и прядение.

14. Кожевники выделяли юфть и сафьян, которые шли на изготовление сапог.

15. В раскопках встречаются многочисленные изделия из кости: иглы, гребни, стрелы, проколки и пуговицы.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. As a result of immigrants' ... woods were cleared away for the plough land.

a) escape;                      b) retreat;                      c) inflow.

2. In the 12<sup>th</sup> century old towns ... .

a) grew;                      b) disappeared;                      c) decayed.

3. The development of the region resulted in the significant growth of the ... lands.

a) poor;                      b) plough;                      c) fertile.

4. In excavations archeologists always find iron ... , which were used for making hay for domestic animals.

a) bows;                      b) scythes;                      c) millstones.

5. The main working tool used for vegetable gardening was *ryltse* – a wooden spade having ... binding on the working edge.

a) iron;                      b) copper;                      c) tin.

6. ... orchards were grown on the territory of the Vladimir-Suzdal principality in the 12<sup>th</sup> century.

- a) apple;                      b) plum;                      c) cherry.

7. During the excavations in Vladimir, Murom, Suzdal, Yaropolch Zalessky they found plenty of fishing iron hooks of different sizes, ... bark floats, clay sinkers for fishing nets.

- a) oak;                      b) linden;                      c) birch.

8. On the bank of the Kamenka River archaeologists found the remains of three ... for burning plinths.

- a) kilns;                      b) ovens;                      c) furnaces.

9. In towns there were special groups of ... cutting stone.

- a) peasants;                      b) merchants;                      c) craftsmen.

10. The beautifully forged copper ... of the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir and the Nativity Cathedral in Suzdal are the outstanding pieces of the Vladimir coppersmiths' work.

- a) floors;                      b) doors;                      c) ceilings.

11. Armourers constituted a special category of ... .

- a) potters;                      b) smiths;                      c) jewelers.

12. Speaking about the arms done by the local armourers one should mention the huge crossbow whose ... big arrows survive up to nowadays.

- a) five;                      b) seven;                      c) nine.

13. The Vladimir craftsmen were the first to use the techniques of fiery gilding and ... .

- a) niello;                      b) engraving;                      c) enameling.

14. In the digs archeologists find plenty of ... and bronze needles.

- a) silver;                      b) copper;                      c) bone.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. In the 12<sup>th</sup> century the Slav colonization came from two areas: from Europe and Asia.

2. Under influence of the Slavs in the economy of the natives based on earth-tilling, the value of cattle-breeding, hunting and fishing grew.



3. Especially fertile lands were in Vladimir.
4. Peasants bred cows, sheep, goats, pigs and horses.
5. The main working tool used for vegetable gardening was *ryltse* – a wooden spade having iron binding on the working edge.
6. In the 12<sup>th</sup> century fruit gardening was a business of peasants.
7. Legends inform of growing apple orchards on the territory of the Vladimir-Suzdal principality since the 12<sup>th</sup> century.
8. The flourishing of pottery and ceramics was connected with the manufacture of various glazed ceramic tiles and bricks.
9. The Rostov and Suzdal boyars scornfully named the people of Vladimir their serfs “stone-cutters and carpenters”.
10. The cross of the Assumption Cathedral and the cross of St. Demetrius Cathedral topped by a weather vane in the form of a copper pigeon are the real masterpieces of the woodworkers’ art.
11. The beautifully forged copper floors of the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir and the Nativity Cathedral in Suzdal are the outstanding pieces of the Vladimir armourers’ work.
12. Armourers made the helmet of Yaroslav Vsevolodovich.
13. In the 12<sup>th</sup> century Russian smiths, including the Vladimir ones, acquired 15 various qualifications and were able to make up to 175 kinds of weapons of iron and steel.
14. Goldsmiths constituted a special group of jewelers.
15. A Russian goldsmith could draw a wire one meter long out of one gram of silver.
16. Russian embroideresses knew up to 100 various stitches.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Where did the Slavs come to the Rostov-Suzdal land from in the 12<sup>th</sup> century?
2. What occupations were important in the peasant household?
3. When did vegetable gardening and fruit gardening originate?

4. What crafts developed in the towns of the Vladimir Rus in the 12<sup>th</sup> century?

5. The construction of what cathedral was the evidence of pottery and ceramics development in the area?

6. What archeological finds testify that the blacksmith's craft was widely spread?

7. Who made the helmet of Yaroslav Vsevolodovich?

8. Were the Vladimir craftsmen the first to use the techniques of fiery gilding and niello?

9. How many stitches did Russian embroideresses know?

***Task 7. Tell about the main occupations of the local population of the Vladimir Rus in the 12<sup>th</sup> century.***

### **Lesson 3. Trade. Towns. The policy of Vladimir Monomakh and Yuri Dolgoruky**

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) trade route	❖ торговый путь
2) merchant	❖ купец
3) borough	❖ небольшой город, пригород
4) to grind flour	❖ молоть муку
5) to spin yarn	❖ прясть пряжу
6) to intrude	❖ вторгнуться
7) statehood	❖ государственность
8) authorities	❖ органы власти
9) internal and foreign policy	❖ внутренняя и внешняя политика
10) stronghold	❖ укрепление
11) superiority	❖ первенство
12) built of white limestone	❖ белокаменный

Economic development of the Vladimir Russia was closely connected with the ancient **trade routes** laid through its territory. Numerous cornelian and crystal beads, glazed ceramic vessels and eastern coins testify about the trade connections with the countries of the East.

There were close ties of the Vladimir land with Novgorod the Great (bread trade occupied a special place in their trade relations), with the Byzantine empire and countries of Western Europe. The rivers Oka, Klyazma, Nerl, were trade routes but in addition to the rivers, there were also overland roads. Blocking the trade roads could stop **merchants** traveling and break the trade relations.

The cities and towns of the Rostov-Suzdal Russia were divided into the old (“senior”) towns and new ones called their “**boroughs**”. The old cities: Rostov, Suzdal, Murom were the former centers of the tribal unions; the new towns or “boroughs” included Vladimir, Pereslavl. Murom and Rostov were mentioned for the first time in the chronicles in 862. Their population was not ethnically uniform (Slavs, Myerya, Muroma); in the 12<sup>th</sup> century the Slav element prevailed. Management of the whole neighborhood was focused in the cities. Therefore, there were the court yards of princes, boyars and their men. But the most numerous city inhabitants were craftsmen and traders. Craftsmen of similar professions usually settled in one place. So, in the cities there were streets inhabited by potters, smiths, leather dressers, etc.

The houses of craftsmen were larger than peasants’ log huts because frequently there were workshops. In some houses in the 12<sup>th</sup> century there were even chimneys, put next to the furnaces. The utensils of the townspeople were of better quality and of bigger variety. In houses there were oil lamps, amphoras for wine, bronze crosses, smart locks and keys. But the wives of craftsmen as well as peasant women **ground flour** on millstones, **span yarn** and wove different fabrics. Craftsmen worked to order and for the market. Some of them had their own places at the market and sold products.

In the history of our region it is possible to distinguish five periods of building cities, the first period is connected with Vladimir Monomakh’s activities in the Rostov-Suzdal land when ten towns-fortresses were built;

the second one followed the transfer of the principality capital from Rostov to Suzdal by Yuri Dolgoruky, when 22 towns were built; the third period was under the rule of Andrei Bogolyubsky who built four towns; in the fourth period in the days of Vsevolod the Big Nest seven more towns were erected, and on the eve of the Tatar-Mongol invasion prince Yuri Vsevolodovich built one city – Nizhny Novgorod.

In the 9<sup>th</sup> – 10<sup>th</sup> centuries the territory between the Volga and the Oka was a part of the Kiev Russia. The people from its main city – Rostov participated in reception of the Greek tribute after Oleg's campaign against Byzantium. In 1096 Oleg Svyatoslavovich (prince of Chernigov, a grandson of Yaroslav the Wise) **intruded** the Rostov land. According to the chronicles he “put his posadniks (mayors) in the towns and cities, and started to take the tribute”. This information allows us to assert that the land of Suzdal was already within the orbit of the ancient Russian **statehood** and began to attract different princes though it was separated from the south of Russia by thick impenetrable forests. Events of the 11<sup>th</sup> – 12<sup>th</sup> centuries confirm the presence in the area of independent city communities having military organizations and uniting a big territory, called a land, volost (a country district). These country districts or volosts included the main cities (Rostov, Suzdal and Murom) and “the boroughs” (Vladimir, Pereslavl and Moscow). This political system was basically different from the old tribal unions. It put the beginning of the early Russian statehood and could be determined as the city-state. Its basis was the community uniting all free people.

**Authorities** in the city-state were the veche (the city assembly) and the prince. The city community was not socially homogeneous. It included local nobility (boyars), merchants and free townspeople. The veche determined both **internal and foreign policy** of the city. The veche decided the issue of inviting a prince and determined his duties.

The prince took a special place in the city-state. He was the guarantor of its independence and the sovereignty. The instrument of his authority was “the oldest men”. The prince appointed them to different posts in the administration. They made the core of princely “nobility” (boyars).

The first Kiev prince closely connected with the Rostov land was Vladimir Monomakh. On his initiative the line of **strongholds** was built on

the Klyazma River. It consisted of cities-fortresses: Sunghir, Vladimir and Osovets. It was built to protect the territory from attacks of the Volga Bulgarians and the neighboring principalities from the south and the west. Securing his rights to these lands, Monomakh put his sons on the Rostov throne. A son of Vladimir Monomakh Yuri Vladimirovich became the first independent prince in the Rostov land. There was the struggle for **superiority** between Rostov and Suzdal. As the result Suzdal became the main city of the principality. Prince Yuri Vladimirovich built his country residence on the bank of the Nerl where the Kideksha flows into it. It gave him an opportunity to control the important trade route to Novgorod the Great. Wishing to strengthen the borders of the Rostov-Suzdal land Yuri built a number of new towns on its boundaries: Moscow, Pereslavl-Zalessky, Yuriev-Polsky. According to the local tradition all the churches and cathedrals were **built of white limestone**.

The first significant step in the foreign policy of prince Yuri later on nicknamed Dolgoruky was a military campaign against the Volga Bulgaria in 1120. The campaign was successful.

In 1132 after the death of the Kiev prince Mstislav, the elder son of Monomakh, the throne in Kiev was empty. Since the most cherished dream of the Suzdal prince was to become the Grand Prince of Kiev. He took campaigns against Kiev and only after the third attempt (in 1154) managed to conquer it and to become the Grand Prince of Kiev.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) close ties;            | a) округа;            |
| 2) overland roads;        | b) кожевник;          |
| 3) trade route;           | c) прясть пряжу;      |
| 4) glazed ceramic vessel; | d) жернова;           |
| 5) neighbourhood;         | e) внешняя политика;  |
| 6) borough;               | f) тесная связь;      |
| 7) leather dresser;       | g) поход;             |
| 8) grind flour;           | h) государственность; |

- |                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 9) millstones;       | i) торговый путь;       |
| 10) spin yarn;       | j) внутренняя политика; |
| 11) work to order;   | k) сухопутные дороги;   |
| 12) erect;           | l) летопись;            |
| 13) campaign;        | m) органы власти;       |
| 14) tribal union;    | n) пригород;            |
| 15) chronicle;       | o) поливной сосуд;      |
| 16) statehood;       | p) работать на заказ;   |
| 17) authorities;     | q) молотить муку;       |
| 18) foreign policy;  | r) племенной союз;      |
| 19) internal policy. | s) возводить.           |

***Task 3. Consult the text and find the English equivalents of the following words and word combinations.***

Сердоликовые и хрустальные бусы; поливные сосуды; Византийская империя; сухопутные дороги; перекрытие торговых дорог; центры племенных союзов; этнически неоднородное население; ремесленники; торговцы; светильники; амфоры для вина, бронзовые кресты; хитроумные замки и ключи; молотить муку на жерновах; прясть пряжу и ткать; Волго-Окское междуречье; густые труднопроходимые леса; самостоятельные городские общины; органы власти в городе-государстве; гарант независимости и суверенности; «старейшая дружина»; линия укреплений; набеги волжских булгар; загородная резиденция; укрепление границ Ростово-Суздальской земли; совершить поход на Киев.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Numerous cornelian and crystal beads, glazed ceramic ... and eastern coins testify about the trade connections with the countries of the East.

- |             |           |          |
|-------------|-----------|----------|
| a) vessels; | b) vases; | c) cups. |
|-------------|-----------|----------|

2. There were close ties of the Vladimir land with Novgorod the Great, with the ... empire and countries of Western Europe.

- a) Parthian;                      b) Roman;                      c) Byzantine.

3. The old cities: Rostov, Suzdal, Murom were the former centers of the ... unions.

- a) tribal;                      b) clan;                      c) family.

4. Murom and Rostov were mentioned for the first time in the chronicles in the ... century.

- a) eighth;                      b) ninth;                      c) twelfth.

5. The most numerous city inhabitants were ... and traders.

- a) craftsmen;                      b) bishops;                      c) merchants.

6. The wives of craftsmen ground ... on millstones, spun yarn and weaved different fabrics.

- a) grain;                      b) flour;                      c) beans.

7. On the eve of the Tatar-Mongol invasion prince Yuri Vsevolodovich built ... .

- a) Suzdal;                      b) Murom;                      c) Nizhny Novgorod.

8. In the 11<sup>th</sup> – 12<sup>th</sup> centuries the land of Suzdal began to attract different princes though it was separated from the south of Russia by ... .

- a) plains;                      b) forests;                      c) rivers.

9. Authorities in the city-state were the veche (the city assembly) and the ... .

- a) prince;                      b) bishop;                      c) nobles.

10. “The oldest men” made the core of princely ... .

- a) company;                      b) power;                      c) nobility.

11. The first Kiev prince closely connected with the Rostov land was ... .

- a) Yuri Dolgoruky; b) Vladimir Monomakh; c) Andrey Bogolyubsky.

12. As the result of the struggle for superiority ... became the main city of the principality.

- a) Suzdal;                      b) Vladimir;                      c) Rostov.

13. According to the local tradition all the ... were built of white limestone.

- a) dwellings;                      b) churches;                      c) court yards.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. Numerous cornelian and crystal beads, glazed ceramic vessels and eastern coins testify about the trade connections with the countries of the West.

2. Murom and Rostov were mentioned for the first time in the chronicles in 980.

3. The most numerous city inhabitants were bishops.

4. The houses of craftsmen were larger than peasants' log huts because craftsmen had more children.

5. The utensils of the townspeople were of better quality and of bigger variety.

6. In the history of our region, it is possible to distinguish four periods of building cities.

7. In the 9<sup>th</sup> – 10<sup>th</sup> centuries the territory between the Volga and the Oka was a part of Novgorod the Great.

8. Events of the 11<sup>th</sup> – 12<sup>th</sup> centuries confirm the presence in the area of independent city communities having military organizations and uniting a big territory, called a land, volost (a country district).

9. The basis of the city-state was the community uniting both free and dependent people.

10. Authorities in the city-state were the archbishop and the prince.

11. The veche determined both internal and foreign policy of the city.

12. The instrument of the prince's authority was "the oldest men".

13. The first Kiev prince closely connected with the Rostov land was Yuri Dolgoruky.

14. On the initiative of Vladimir Monomakh, the line of strongholds was built on the Klyazma River to protect the territory from attacks of the Volga Bulgarians and the neighboring principalities from the south and the west.

15. A son of Vladimir Monomach Yuri Vladimirovich became the first independent prince in the Rostov land.



16. There was the struggle for superiority between Vladimir and Suzdal.

17. Prince Yuri Vladimirovich built his country residence on the bank of the Klyazma.

18. The first significant step in the foreign policy of prince Yuri later on nicknamed Dolgoruky was a military campaign against the Byzantine Empire in 1120.

19. In 1154 Yuri Dolgoruky became the Grand Prince of Kiev.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. What were the old cities of the Rostov-Suzdal Russia?
2. Can you name any new towns of the Rostov-Suzdal Russia?
3. Who inhabited the cities?
4. Why were the houses of craftsmen larger than peasants' log huts?
5. How many periods of building cities can be distinguished in the history of our region? What are they?
6. What was the basis of the city-state?
7. What were the authorities in the city-state?
8. Was the city community socially heterogenous?
9. What were the functions of the veche?
10. Who guaranteed the independence and the sovereignty of the city-state?
11. On whose initiative was the line of strongholds built?
12. Who became the first independent prince in the Rostov land?
13. Did Rostov become the main city of the principality in the first quarter of the 12<sup>th</sup> century?
14. Did Prince Yuri manage to become the Grand Prince of Kiev?

***Task 7. Make the plan of the text and give its short summary.***

UNIT 4  
**THE FLOURISHING OF THE VLADIMIR-SUZDAL  
PRINCIPALITY IN THE SECOND HALF OF THE 12<sup>TH</sup> CENTURY**

*Lesson 1. The Reign of Andrey Bogolyubsky*

*Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:*

1) nobility	❖ знать, боярство
2) violation	❖ нарушение
3) council	❖ совет
4) to exile	❖ сослать, изгнать
5) arrogant	❖ высокомерный, заносчивый
6) majestic	❖ величественный
7) dedicated	❖ посвященный
8) Holy Virgin (Virgin Mary)	❖ Богородица
9) simultaneously	❖ одновременно
10) confluence	❖ слияние
11) devastation	❖ разорение
12) clergy	❖ духовенство, священники
13) ecclesiastical	❖ духовный, церковный
14) imperious	❖ властный, деспотический
15) priest	❖ священник
16) plot	❖ заговор
17) retinue	❖ окружение, приближенные
18) house-keeper	❖ ключник
19) conspirator	❖ заговорщик
20) guard room	❖ караульное помещение
21) page	❖ паж
22) bedchamber	❖ опочивальня
23) deceit	❖ обман
24) sword	❖ меч
25) passage	❖ коридор
26) doorway	❖ дверной проем

27) saber	❖ сабля
28) collar-bone	❖ ключица
29) blow	❖ удар
30) accomplice	❖ сообщник
31) consciousness	❖ сознание
32) groans	❖ стон
33) slaughter	❖ побоище, кровавая расправа
34) mutiny	❖ мятеж, бунт
35) molested	❖ изуродованный
36) corpse	❖ труп
37) to mourn	❖ оплакивать

The history of the Vladimir-Suzdal Principality in the 12<sup>th</sup> century is closely connected with the reign of Andrey Bogolyubsky. In 1155 Andrey Yurievich left Vyshgorod (suburb of Kiev) and moved to Suzdal. In 1157 after Yuri Dolgoruky's death in Kiev, his close boyars, some of his men, and also his younger sons – Michael and Vsevolod came to the northeast of Russia. Their arrival was quite justified, because even in Yuri Dolgoruky's lifetime “all the land”, that is the people of Rostov, Suzdal, Vladimir and Pereslavl “kissed the cross” to Yuri Dolgoruky's young sons. Under the agreement with the local **nobility** Michael and Vsevolod should receive territories to reign. As a **violation** of their agreement with the Grand Prince local town communities chose Andrey. His younger brothers were even removed from the **council**. First time, however, they probably ruled together with Andrey, because they were **exiled** from the Vladimir-Suzdal land only in 1162. Together with his brothers Andrey exiled from Suzdal his nephews and **arrogant** boyars who did not share Andrey's views. At this time Andrey got on well with local boyars.

Young prince understood well all the possibilities of Vladimir and vigorously promoted its rise. He began wide stone construction in Vladimir, having transferred here the capital of a principality from Suzdal.

The city of Vladimir extended to the east and west, becoming one of the largest cities of ancient Russia. According to the tradition, the city should have the religious center. Prince built a **majestic** white-stone cathedral

**dedicated** to the **Holy Virgin (Virgin Mary)**. **Simultaneously** with construction in Vladimir, building of the white-stone country residence of the prince was conducted in Bogolubovo at the **confluence** of the Klyazma and the Nerl.

Leaving Vyshgorod Andrey took away a Byzantine icon of the Mother of God (the end the 11<sup>th</sup> – beginning of 12<sup>th</sup> centuries). According to the legend, in the place where the rivers Nerl and Klyazma flowed together, the horses, bearing the icon, suddenly stopped. It was decided to stop at this place for a night. At night in his dream Andrey saw the Virgin who ordered him to build a town on this spot.

In regard to Kiev, Novgorod and the Volga Bulgaria Andrey Yuryevich continued the policy of his father, but with some slight deviations. After Yuri Dolgoruky's death Kiev continuously passed from hands to hands. In 1169 Andrey sent to Kiev the troops from Suzdal, Rostov, Pereyaslavl and Vladimir under the leadership of his son Mstislav. Kiev was taken and subjected to terrible **devastation**. Andrey Bogolyubsky did not go to Kiev and left it to his brother Gleb. For the first time in the history of the Russian State Prince refused the Kiev throne, and there was the situation when “the land of Suzdal” and its center Vladimir claimed the role of the nation-wide center. Andrey did not want “to sit” on the princely throne in Kiev, and was going to reign the Russian lands from Vladimir on the Klyazma. Since the second half of 1150s the Vladimir and Suzdal principality stopped to pay tribute to Kiev.

The policy of Prince Andrey Bogoylyubsky directed on further strengthening of princely power and its influence in other Russian principalities demanded participation of townspeople in numerous campaigns, which caused dissatisfaction on the part of the Rostov, Suzdal and Vladimir nobility. This opposition found support of Vladimir church lords (the higher **clergy**).

Andrey understood the importance of the church as the guarantee of stability in society and support of princely authority. Trying to raise prestige and political influence of the Vladimir-Suzdal principality, Andrey Bogolyubsky took an attempt to establish in Vladimir a metropolitanate

independent of the **ecclesiastical** authorities of Kiev. But he did not get any support of the Constantinople patriarch.

The active policy of the **imperious** Vladimir prince caused the dissatisfaction of the local boyars, **priests** and even common people. In the summer of 1174 the **plot** was organized against Andrey Bogolyubsky. The plot participants were people from the prince's **retinue**, the Kuchkovich boyars, the Kuchkovich son-in-law boyar Pyotr, the prince's wife, the prince's servant Yakim and the **house-keeper** Ambal Yasin, the Osset (Ossetian) by birth. There were 20 persons all in all.

**Conspirators** gathered in the house of Boyar Petr on the 28<sup>th</sup> of June, on the eve of the holiday of Sts. Apostles Peter and Paul. Late at night, the armed conspirators, having drunk wine from the prince's cellar for bravery, penetrated into a palace. They disarmed the palace guards in the **guard room** on the ground floor of a palace tower. The personal servant of Andrey, his **page**, the boy Procopius by name was also seized. He was taken quite suddenly and had no time either to warn the prince or to cry for help. The spiral stone staircase in that tower led to the personal apartments of the prince on the second floor of the palace. It has survived till now.

Coming up the steps of the spiral staircase the conspirators got to the second floor. There was a gallery leading from the tower to the palace which did not survive up to now. This gallery about 10 m long was narrow and finished with the door to the prince's **bedchamber**. The conspirators had to move slowly one after another all along the corridor. The first two, having passed the gallery, stopped before a closed door. Behind it there was the prince. The conspirators did not wish to break down the door and to make unnecessary noise. They decided to get the prince's bedchamber by a **deceit**. One of them pretending that he was Procopius, the prince's servant, and imitating his voice, asked the prince to open the door. Andrey discovered the deceit, and further conversation lost sense. The conspirators broke down the door and attacked the prince. Andrey fought with his enemies unarmed, he could not even take his **sword**, because this sword (according to the legend it had belonged to Sts. Boris and Gleb) had been taken from the prince's bedchamber by Ambal, the house-keeper.

The narrow **passage** of the gallery and still narrower **doorway** complicated actions of conspirators. Only two of them could get at through the broken door of the bedchamber. The prince, even unarmed managed to knock down one of the attackers. But forces were unequal. Andrey facing the attacking boyars half-turned to the left was first hit with the **saber**. That blow was on his left **collar-bone**. Other **blows** followed one by one. Prince Andrey fell down. In the deep darkness, obstructing each other, conspirators struck blows on Andrey and on their accomplice brought down by him using swords and spears. The conspirators finally decided that prince was killed, and, having taken their wounded **accomplice**, left the bedchamber.

But the prince was still alive. In some minutes he regained **consciousness**, rose, passed the passage and went down the spiral staircase leaving behind the trail of blood. Getting out of the tower and holding on the wall, Prince Andrey made some steps and powerlessly lowered himself on the ground. But the conspirators heard **groans**. They turned back and began to search for the prince everywhere in the palace, but could not find him anywhere. The panic seized them; they burnt candles and on bloody trail found the prince sitting at the tower wall.

The bloody **slaughter** began. The first the Kuchkovich son-in-law Petr struck him with the sword and cut off his left hand. After Peter other conspirators began to strike Andrey with their swords. In fear and fury they continued to strike the already lifeless body of the prince. Having killed the prince, conspirators returned to the palace. Here at the entrance to the tower they saw the prince's page Procopius and killed him.

Then came to the second floor of the tower where the prince's treasures were stored: gold, precious stones, pearls and different expensive fabrics. Murderers took them away, loaded on horses and while it was still dark left Bogolyubovo. By the morning everything had been over. The conspirators took the residence of the prince, the weapons and the treasury.

The murder of Prince Andrey Bogolyubsky served as a signal to the **mutiny** against the princely administration and boyars. Disorders had lasted for almost a week. The princely palace in Bogolyubovo was plundered completely. The **molested** half-naked **corpse** of the prince had been thrown

out into the garden. Only a devoted servant, Kuzma of Kiev had **mourned** the death of his master and brought his body to the church. On the third day the priests from Bogolyubovo put the remains of the prince to a stone coffin, performed a funeral service and Prince Andrey was buried in the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir built by his order.

*Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:*

- |                                |                                   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1) arrogant boyars;            | a) княжество;                     |
| 2) according to the legend;    | b) отказаться от киевского стола; |
| 3) terrible devastation;       | c) по договору;                   |
| 4) men;                        | d) горожане;                      |
| 5) to reign;                   | e) недовольство;                  |
| 6) to pay the tribute;         | f) сокровища;                     |
| 7) princely power;             | g) винтовая лестница;             |
| 8) under the agreement;        | h) местное боярство;              |
| 9) son-in-law;                 | i) жемчуг;                        |
| 10) armed conspirators;        | j) убийство;                      |
| 11) spiral staircase;          | k) сигнал к мятежу;               |
| 12) narrow passage;            | l) слуга;                         |
| 13) principality;              | m) беспорядки;                    |
| 14) treasures;                 | n) управлять;                     |
| 15) dissatisfaction;           | o) оружие;                        |
| 16) townspeople;               | p) узкий коридор;                 |
| 17) signal to the mutiny;      | q) дружина;                       |
| 18) weapon;                    | r) зять;                          |
| 19) pearls;                    | s) княжеская власть;              |
| 20) to refuse the Kiev throne; | t) платить дань;                  |
| 21) disorders;                 | u) по преданию;                   |
| 22) servant;                   | v) ужасный разгром;               |
| 23) local nobility;            | w) вооруженные заговорщики;       |
| 24) murder.                    | x) властные бояре.                |

*Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.*

1. История Владимирского края в XII веке связана с правлением князя Андрея Боголюбского.

2. В 1155 году Андрей Юрьевич покинул Вышгород (пригород Киева) и переехал в Суздаль.

3. В нарушение договора с великим киевским князем местные городские общины выбрали на правление Андрея.

4. Вероятно, что первое время младшие братья – Михаил и Всеволод – правили совместно с Андреем, так как из пределов Владимиро-Суздальской земли они были изгнаны лишь в 1162 году.

5. Молодой князь понял возможности города Владимира и энергично способствовал его возвышению, начал широкое строительство во Владимире, перенеся сюда столицу княжества из Суздаля.

6. Город Владимир расширялся на восток и запад, становясь одним из крупнейших городов Древней Руси.

7. Одновременно со строительством Успенского собора во Владимире велось строительство белокаменной загородной княжеской резиденции у слияния рек Нерли и Клязьмы.

8. Андрей Юрьевич продолжал политику своего отца по отношению к Киеву, Новгороду и Волжской Булгарии, но с некоторыми особенностями.

9. Андрей не хотел сидеть в Киеве на княжеском столе, а стремился управлять русскими землями из Владимира на Клязьме.

10. Политика Андрея Юрьевича, направленная на дальнейшее усиление княжеской власти и закрепление влияния в русских княжествах, требовавшая участия горожан в многочисленных походах, вызывала недовольство со стороны ростовского, суздальского и владимирского боярства.

11. Летом 1174 года против князя созрел заговор.



**Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.**

1. In Yuri Dolgoruky's lifetime "all the land", that is the people of Rostov, Suzdal, Vladimir and Pereslavl "kissed the cross" to Yuri Dolgoruky's ... .

a) young sons;                      b) elder sons;                      c) brothers.

2. Under the agreement with ... Michael and Vsevolod should receive territories to reign.

a) the men;                      b) the clergy;                      c) the local nobility.

3. In 1169 Andrey sent to Kiev the troops from Suzdal, Rostov, Pereyaslavl and Vladimir under the leadership of ... .

a) his son Mstislav;    b) his brother Michael;    c) his brother Vsevolod.

4. Together with his brothers Andrey ... Suzdal his nephews and arrogant boyars who did not share Andrey's views.

a) invited to;                      b) moved out;                      c) exiled from.

5. According to the tradition the city should have the ... center.

a) health;                      b) religious;                      c) civic.

6. According to the legend, in the place where the rivers Nerl and Klyazma flowed together, the horses, bearing the icon, suddenly ... .

a) stopped;                      b) reared;                      c) fell on the ground.

7. Since the second half of 1150s the Vladimir and Suzdal principality stopped to ... to Kiev.

a) give a tithe;                      b) send troops;                      c) pay tribute.

8. The ... policy of imperious Vladimir prince caused the dissatisfaction of the local boyars, priests and even common people.

a) economic;                      b) international;                      c) active.

9. In the summer of ... the plot was organized against the prince.

a) 1155;                      b) 1177;                      c) 1174.

10. The plot participants were people from the ... .

a) lower class;                      b) foreigners;                      c) Prince's retinue.

11. ... the armed conspirators, having drunk wine from the prince's cellar for bravery, penetrated into a palace.

a) early in the morning;    b) in the afternoon;    c) late at night.

12. Andrey facing the attacking boyars half-turned to the left was first hit with the ... .

- a) axe;                                      b) saber;                                      c) knife.

13. On the third day the priests from Bogolyubovo put the remains of the prince to a stone coffin, performed a funeral service and Prince Andrey was buried in ... in Vladimir built by his order.

- a) the Church of the Intercession on the Nerl;  
b) the Assumption Cathedral;  
c) the Church of Sts. Boris and Gleb.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. In 1157 after Yuri Dolgoruky's death in Kiev his close boyars, some of his men, and also his younger sons – Michael and Vsevolod came to the southwest of Russia.

2. Under the agreement with townspeople Michael and Vsevolod should receive territories to reign.

3. Yuri Dolgoruky's younger sons – Michael and Vsevolod – had been ruling together with Andrey until his death in 1174.

4. Andrey wanted “to sit” on the princely throne in Kiev, and wasn't going to reign the Russian lands from Vladimir on the Klyazma.

5. In 1169 Andrey sent to Kiev the troops from Suzdal, Rostov, Pereyaslavl and Vladimir under the leadership of his son Mstislav but Kiev wasn't taken.

6. For the second time in the history of the Russian State Prince refused the Kiev throne, and there was the situation when “the land of Suzdal” and its center Vladimir claimed the role of the nation-wide center.

7. Andrey didn't understand the importance of the church as the guarantee of stability in society and support of princely authority.

8. Prince Andrey built a majestic wooden cathedral dedicated to the Holy Virgin (Virgin Mary).

9. Simultaneously with construction in Vladimir construction of the white-stone country residence of the prince was conducted in Bogolubovo at the confluence of the Klyazma and the Oka.

10. Andrey's murderers didn't take the prince's treasures.

11. The murder of Prince Andrey Bogolyubsky served as a signal to the mutiny against the princely administration and boyars.

12. After the death of Andrey Bogolyubsky disorders had lasted for almost a year.

13. The princely palace in Bogolyubovo wasn't plundered completely.

14. A lot of people mourned the death of Prince Andrey Bogolyubsky.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Who was to receive the territories to reign after Yuri Dolgoruky's death?

2. Whom did the local town communities choose to reign?

3. What policy did Andrey Bogolyubsky perform?

4. Whom did Andrey exile from Suzdal?

5. Where were churches, cathedrals, monasteries situated in a town according to the tradition?

6. Andrey Bogolyubsky began wide stone construction, didn't he?

7. What is the legend of Bogolubovo foundation?

8. Why didn't Andrey want to "sit" on the princely throne in Kiev?

9. When did the Vladimir and Suzdal principality stop to pay tribute to Kiev?

10. Why did the policy of Andrey Bogolyubsky cause dissatisfaction on the part of the Rostov, Suzdal and Vladimir nobility, church lords and townspeople?

11. When was the plot organized against Andrey?

12. Who took part in the plot?

13. Did the conspirators kill Andrey right after penetrating into a palace?

14. Why did Andrey fight with his enemies unarmed?

15. Did the conspirators manage to take the treasury of prince?

16. What caused the murder of Prince Andrey Bogolyubsky?

17. Where was Andrey Bogolyubsky buried?

***Task 7. Be ready to speak on the reign of Andrey Bogolyubsky.***

## **Lesson 2. The Political Crisis after Andrey Bogolyubsky's Death. Vsevolod the Big Nest**

**Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:**

1) struggle	❖ борьба
2) assembly	❖ собрание
3) robbery	❖ грабеж, разбой
4) progeny	❖ потомство
5) hereditary	❖ наследственный
6) to raid	❖ вторгаться, совершать набег
7) captive	❖ пленник
8) to blind	❖ ослеплять
9) to execute	❖ казнить
10) to perish	❖ погибать, умирать
11) dungeon	❖ подземная тюрьма
12) to swear allegiance	❖ присягнуть на верность
13) submission	❖ подчинение
14) manor	❖ поместье, имение, усадьба
15) diocese	❖ епархия
16) bishop	❖ епископ
17) to compile	❖ составлять
18) sermons	❖ проповеди

After the death of Andrey Bogolyubsky a political crisis began in the Vladimir-Suzdal land. The **struggle** between the old cities and Vladimir for the leadership in the area renewed.

The Vladimir veche (the townspeople **assembly**) first elected Mikhail, a younger brother of Andrey Bogolyubsky, to be their prince, but he could not resist the opposition of the Rostov and Suzdal people. In seven weeks the people of Vladimir drove Mikhail away and decided to invite to reign two princes at once: Mstislav Rostislavich and Yaropolk Rostislavich, Andrey Bogolyubsky's cousins. Both princes were the protégés of Rostov. They started not with the restoration of the order in Vladimir but with the

**robberies.** On the first day the main city cathedral, the Assumption Cathedral, a symbol of the city community independence, was plundered. Rostislaviches did not stay in Vladimir for long. Mikhail who was restored on the Vladimir throne also did not stay long in the city on the Klyazma. The crisis was over in 1176 with the victory of the young cities, Vladimir and firmly supporting it Pereyaslavl.

According to the decision of veche Vsevolod III the Big Nest, the younger brother of Andrey Bogolyubsky, occupied the Vladimir throne. Such rare nickname this prince received either for the big **progeny** or for successful collecting the Russian lands. The people of Vladimir kissed the cross not only to Vsevolod but also to “his children”. So the Vladimir throne became **hereditary**, and Vsevolod III was the first Vladimir prince whom all the chronicle writers named the Great Prince.

In 1177 the Ryazan prince Gleb Rostislavich **raided** the lands of Vsevolod the Big Nest, burnt out Moscow, but his troops were defeated on the Koloksha River. Gleb Rostislavich was taken **captive** together with his troop. On demand of the townspeople Vsevolod was compelled to **blind** the Ryazan people, but some of them were released.

After the second mutiny of the townspeople all the captured Ryazan people were **executed**. Gleb Rostislavich **perished** in the **dungeon**. The conflicts with Ryazan went on in the 13<sup>th</sup> century as well. In 1207 Vsevolod sent his son Yaroslav to reign in Ryazan. The Ryazan people first **swore allegiance** to the new prince, but then raised the mutiny. Then in 1208 Vsevolod with his army approached Ryazan, took all the inhabitants from city, and burnt it out. It greatly weakened the Ryazan principality which couldn't restore its position even in 29 years when the Tatar-Mongols came to Ryazan.

Vsevolod Yuryevich had been reigning for a long time, almost for forty years. The years of his reign became the years of the highest power of the Vladimir-Suzdal Russia. He was the son of Yuri Dolgoruky and a Byzantine Princess Olga, brought up at an imperial court in Constantinople. The Great Prince of Vladimir Vsevolod continued the course of his father and brother on strengthening of princely power and consolidation of the Russian lands. Under his rule the authority of the Vladimir-Suzdal land

among the Russian principalities grew, its territory considerably expanded, new cities appeared. Vsevolod forced into **submission** the arrogant Rostov boyars, Novgorod, Ryazan, Chernigov, and Kiev were again subordinated to Vladimir. Vladimir, the son of the Kiev Prince; Izyaslav, a brother of Pereslavl Prince; Mstislav, a son of Smolensk Prince; as well as the Princes of Murom and Ryazan participated in his two campaigns against the Volga Bulgarians. All this testified to the high authority of the Great Prince of Vladimir in all the Russian lands.

Up to the end of the 12<sup>th</sup> century princes collected tribute (polyudie). The taxes collected by prince's administration on a regular basis covered all the state needs. The incomes of the prince's family and their servants came from the prince's **manors**. The possessions of the prince were extensive. The boyars also became the large land owners.

In 1214 the independent Vladimir **diocese** was established. Its first **bishop** was the archimandrite of the Cave monastery in Kiev Simon. The residence of bishop was placed in the Nativity monastery. Monasteries in Russia appeared in the middle of the 11<sup>th</sup> century. In the north-eastern lands the most ancient monasteries were the monastery of the Savior in Murom (the 11<sup>th</sup> century), the Nativity monastery and the Assumption Princess Nunnery in Vladimir (the 12<sup>th</sup> century), St. Demetrius and Sts. Cosmas and Damian monasteries, the Deposition of the Robe Nunnery in Suzdal (the 12<sup>th</sup> – the beginning of the 13<sup>th</sup> centuries).

In first third of the 13<sup>th</sup> century in the Vladimir-Suzdal principality there were 23 monasteries. The church became the rich and influential organization and played an important part in education. Monasteries were large centers of culture. They had rich libraries where chronicles were **compiled**, **sermons** and the lives of the saints were written. There were also schools in monasteries.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                              |                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1) leadership;               | a) выбирать;        |
| 2) restoration of the order; | b) Успенский собор; |

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 3) on demand;                          | c) противостоять;                  |
| 4) strengthening of princely power;    | d) Козьмодемьянский монастырь;     |
| 5) consolidation of lands;             | e) независимость городской общины; |
| 6) the Nativity monastery;             | f) горожане;                       |
| 7) to resist;                          | g) княжеские имения;               |
| 8) the Deposition of the Robe Nunnery; | h) Рождественский монастырь;       |
| 9) to elect;                           | i) княжить                         |
| 10) Sts. Cosmas and Damian monastery;  | j) Успенский Княгинин монастырь;   |
| 11) a city community independence;     | к) восстановление порядка;         |
| 12) the Assumption Cathedral;          | l) Спасский монастырь;             |
| 13) to reign;                          | m) превосходство;                  |
| 14) the Assumption Princess Nunnery;   | n) объединение земель;             |
| 15) prince's manors;                   | o) по требованию;                  |
| 16) townspeople;                       | р) укрепление княжеской власти;    |
| 17) the Monastery of the Savior.       | q) Ризоположенский монастырь.      |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. После смерти Андрея Боголюбского на Владимиро-Суздальской земле начался политический кризис.

2. Владимирский престол по приговору вече занял младший брат (по отцу) Андрея Боголюбского – Всеволод III Большое Гнездо.

3. В 1177 году рязанский князь Глеб Ростиславич совершил набег на земли Всеволода Большое Гнездо, сжег Москву, но был разбит на реке Колокше и взят в плен вместе со своим войском.





6. Vsevolod III was the first Vladimir prince whom all the chronicle writers named the ... Prince.

- a) wise;                              b) imperious;                      c) great.

7. After the second ... the townspeople all the captured Ryazan people were executed.

- a) negotiation with;              b) mutiny of;                      c) restraining.

8. In 1207 Vsevolod sent his son ... to reign in Ryazan.

- a) Ivan;                                b) Svyatoslav;                      c) Yaroslav.

9. Vsevolod forced into submission the arrogant Rostov ... .

- a) townspeople;                      b) clergy;                              c) boyars.

10. The incomes of the prince's family and their servants came from the prince's ... .

- a) manors;                              b) court;                              c) treasury.

11. The residence of bishop was placed in ... .

- a) the Nativity monastery;  
b) the Deposition of the Robe Nunnery;  
c) the Assumption Princess Nunnery.

12. In first third of the 13<sup>th</sup> century in the Vladimir-Suzdal principality there were 23 ... .

- a) monasteries;                      b) schools;                              c) dioceses.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. Mstislav Rostislavich and Yaropolk Rostislavich, Andrey Bogolyubsky's cousins, started their reign with the restoration of the order in Vladimir.

2. Rostislaviches had been staying in Vladimir for long.

3. The crisis was over in 1176 with the victory of the old cities, Vladimir and firmly supporting it Pereyaslavl.

4. According to the decision of clergy Vsevolod III the Big Nest, the younger brother of Andrey Bogolyubsky, occupied the Vladimir throne.

5. Vsevolod the Big Nest got such rare nickname for the big progeny.

6. The people of Vladimir “kissed the cross” not only to Vsevolod but also to his brothers.

7. On demand of the townspeople Vsevolod was compelled to release all the Ryazan people.

8. Gleb Rostislavich perished in exile.

9. In 1208 Vsevolod with his army approached Ryazan, took all the inhabitants from city, and burnt it out.

10. The Great Prince of Vladimir Vsevolod continued the course of his father and brother on strengthening of princely power and distribution of the Russian lands.

11. In 1217 the independent Vladimir diocese was established.

12. Monasteries in Russia appeared in the middle of the 13<sup>th</sup> century.

13. Monasteries were both the large centers of religious life and culture.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. How was the political crisis expressed after the death of Andrey Bogolyubsky?

2. Who was invited to reign the Vladimir-Suzdal land after the death of Andrew Bogolubsky?

3. What did Mstislav Rostislavich and Yaropolk Rostislavich start their policy with?

4. When was the crisis over?

5. What does the rare nickname of Vsevolod the Big Nest mean?

6. How did the Vladimir throne become hereditary?

7. What conflict was there with the Ryazan Prince Gleb Rostislavich?

8. What weakened greatly the Ryazan principality?

9. How long had Vsevolod the Big Nest been reigning?

10. What policy did Vsevolod the Big Nest pursue?

11. What testified to the high authority of the Great Prince of Vladimir in all the Russian lands?

12. When was the independent Vladimir diocese established?

13. What were the most ancient monasteries in the north-eastern lands?

14. How many monasteries were there in first third of the 13<sup>th</sup> century in the Vladimir-Suzdal principality?

15. What role did the monasteries play?

16. Why did the reign of Vsevolod the Big Nest become the years of the highest power of Vladimir-Suzdal Rus'?

***Task 7. Tell about the reign of Vsevolod the Big Nest.***

### ***Lesson 3. The Culture Flourishing of the Vladimir-Suzdal Principality***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) foundation	❖ фундамент
2) mortar	❖ раствор
3) to collapse	❖ развалиться, рухнуть
4) to consecrate	❖ освещать
5) copper plate	❖ медная пластина
6) scene	❖ сцена
7) Old and New Testaments of the Bible	❖ Ветхий и Новый Завет Библии
8) delicate	❖ тонкий, изысканный
9) to glimmer	❖ мерцать
10) majolica tiles	❖ майоликовые плитки
11) devoid of	❖ свободный от, лишенный
12) austere	❖ строгий
13) slit-like	❖ щелевидный
14) to enhance	❖ придавать, усиливать
15) blind arcading	❖ аркатурный пояс
16) wedge-shaped	❖ заостренный, клиновидный
17) solidity	❖ прочность, массивность
18) bare	❖ голый, пустой
19) stern	❖ суровый
20) loophole	❖ бойница

21) dilapidated	❖ обветшалый, полуразрушенный
22) carving	❖ резьба
23) brick layer, stone mason	❖ каменщик
24) trimmed (hewn)	❖ тесаный
25) limestone	❖ известняк
26) gilded	❖ позолоченный
27) narthex	❖ притвор
28) arch	❖ арка
29) arched opening	❖ арочный проем
30) pillar	❖ столб
31) regal	❖ царственный
32) helmet-shaped	❖ шлемовидный
33) choir gallery	❖ соборный хор
34) to commemorate	❖ в память, в честь
35) high water	❖ паводок
36) elongated	❖ вытянутый
37) drum	❖ барабан купола, свода
38) to lean	❖ наклонять
39) height	❖ высота
40) secular	❖ светский
41) giant	❖ гигантский
42) crosspiece	❖ перемычка
43) four-pillar	❖ четырехстолпный
44) majestic	❖ величественный
45) slender	❖ грациозный, изящный
46) attire	❖ одеяние
47) to entwine	❖ обвивать
48) lacelike	❖ ажурный
49) casket	❖ ларец
50) intertwined	❖ переплетающийся
51) monk	❖ монах
52) moralizing	❖ нравоучительный
53) pious	❖ благочестивый

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 54) the Lay, Prayer, Legend<br>and the Tale | ❖ слово, моление, сказание,<br>повесть |
| 55) milieu                                  | ❖ окружение                            |

In the 12<sup>th</sup> – the first half of the 13<sup>th</sup> century there was *the brightest period of the cultural history of the territory*. The beginning of stone construction was put by the Prince of Pereyaslavl Vladimir Monomach. At the turn of the 11<sup>th</sup> and 12<sup>th</sup> centuries (between 1096 and 1105) the prince and the bishop of Pereyaslavl Efrem accompanying him initiated the building of the cathedral of the Assumption of the Holy Virgin in Suzdal. The Assumption Church of the Caves Monastery was taken for its model. However the cathedral did not exist for long, only for about 45 years. Due to the technical faults, the small depth of the **foundations**, weakness of the **mortar**, its walls **collapsed**. On the same place Yuri Dolgoruky erected a new cathedral that was **consecrated** in 1143. The Suzdal cathedral was frequently totally reconstructed in the 13<sup>th</sup> – 18<sup>th</sup> centuries; its appearance and internal decoration were changed. It got its present-day look after the repairs in 1750.



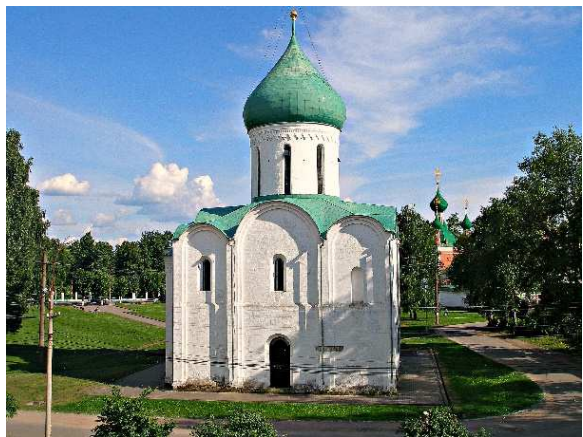
The true masterpieces of the applied art in the beginning of the 13<sup>th</sup> century are the Golden Gates of the Nativity Cathedral in Suzdal installed in the western and southern portals as well as the floors of the cathedral. Huge door folds of the gates were covered with the **copper plates**, depicting the **scenes** from the **Old and New Testaments of the Bible** performed in **delicate** gold lines **glimmering** on a black background. The floors in the cathedral were covered with **majolica tiles** of yellow, green and dark-brown color, and in the altar the floor was made of small figured tiles.

The most ancient monument of Russian architecture is the white-stone one-domed church of Sts. Boris and Gleb in Kideksha, the prototype of all Vladimir-Suzdal churches. It was the beginning of Vladimir white-stone architecture. The church was built in 1152. At that time in Kideksha (in 5 km from Suzdal, on the bank of the Nerl River) there was the country

residence of Yuri Dolgoruky. The walls of church are **devoid of** decorative ornaments. The whole building is simple and **austere**. The narrow, **slit-like** windows **enhance** the austerity of the church outlook. The only piece of decoration is a band of cut stone and **blind arcading** on **wedge-shaped** consoles which emphasizes the laconic **solidity** of the walls. The interior of a temple is equally simple. In Yuri's time the church in Kideksha was not painted and the church service took place within the **bare** walls. The fresco painting appeared only at the end of 12<sup>th</sup> century. The building, deformed to a certain extent, survived up to now.

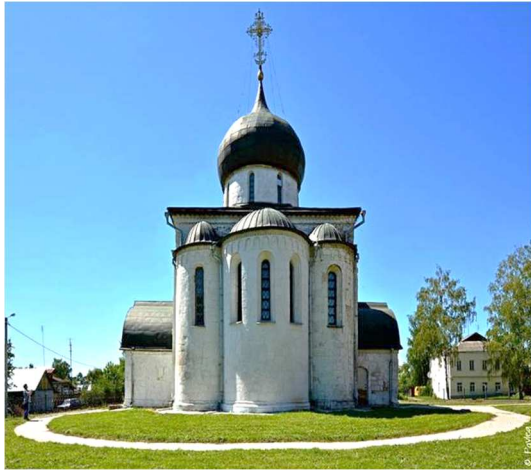


Simultaneously with the construction of church in Kideksha the Cathedral of the Transfiguration of the Savior and the Cathedral of St. George were built in Pereyaslavl-Zalessky and Yuriev-Polsky. In Pereyaslavl Yuri Dolgoruky only started to build the cathedral, and its construction was finished by Andrey Bogolyubsky. By its **stern** and solid look the cathedral seemed to say that it was the main building of the fortress of Pereyaslavl which was built at the same time. The narrow windows looking like **loopholes** were made only in the upper part of the cathedral.



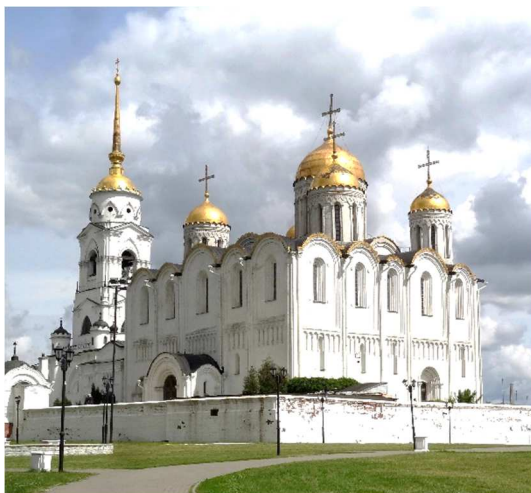
The white-stone church of St. George in Yuriev-Polsky was also built simultaneously with the city foundation and construction of a fortress, but in 1230 Prince Svyatoslav (a son of Vsevolod III) brought down the **dilapidated** building and on its place built (1230 – 1234) the new stone church dedicated to the same saint. It was built by the team of masons headed by the master Bakun. It was more beautifully decorated than other churches. According to the chronicle all over its outside the church had extremely beautiful **carvings** of the saints. The architecture of St. George Cathedral

served as a model for the Moscow architecture of the 14<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries. The stone churches of the Moscow Kremlin in the time of Ivan Kalita and Ivan III were built according to this model.



In 50 – 60s of the 12<sup>th</sup> century the big construction was held in Vladimir. In 1158 – 1160 the Assumption Cathedral, the main cathedral of North-Eastern Russia, was built. For the construction and decoration of the cathedral Prince Andrey Bogolyubsky gave the tenth part of his treasury incomes. The local

builders and craftsmen who had acquired their skills during the reign of Yuri Dolgoruky were too few in number to carry out the ambitious plans for building the new capital, particularly the Cathedral of the Assumption, and the chronicle tells us that “God brought artists to Andrey from all parts of the Earth”. However, there were no master **brick layers** from Kiev and the towns of the Dnieper basin. They were expert **stone masons**, including Romanesque craftsmen from the West who were sent to Andrey by Barbarossa. In Europe of the Middle Ages it was quite usual to gather craftsmen from various different countries to erect important buildings.



The Assumption Cathedral was built of **trimmed** white **limestone** decorated with sculptural reliefs and **gilded** blind arcading against the background of the band of fresco painting. In 1185 the cathedral suffered a great damage during the fire. Its repair took five years. The **narthexes** and towers of the cathedral were dismantled and replaced with the side galleries, the

walls of the old cathedral were strengthened and connected with the new ones with **arches**. Large and small **arched openings** were cut in the walls of the old building forming rows of **pillars** in the enlarged cathedral. Instead

of one dome the cathedral received five domes. The sculptures from old walls were transferred to the new facades. A special attention was paid to the northern facade facing the city. It was decorated with lion masks, an emblem of **regal** force, the women's masks indicating the cathedral dedication to the Virgin Mary.

In the Assumption Cathedral there was the greatest Russian relic icon of the Holy Virgin of Vladimir, a masterpiece of the Byzantine art. The **helmet-shaped** domes of the cathedral and its interior decorations shined with gold. The severe simplicity of the churches of Yuri Dolgoruky's time had gone into the past. The Vladimir cathedral was compared to the legendary biblical temple of Tsar Solomon. For a long time it had been a model for cathedrals built in Moscow.

10 km from Vladimir, on the bank of the River Nerl Prince Andrey founded the town of Bogolyubovo. In the center of the town-fortress there was a cathedral, the construction of which was started simultaneously with the Vladimir Assumption Cathedral. The cathedral was also dedicated to the church festival connected with the Holy Virgin, the Nativity of the Holy Virgin. That cathedral existed up to the end of the 17<sup>th</sup> century. The contemporaries were fascinated with beauty and precious decorations of the cathedral, its "golden floors", its portals and doors bound with "gold", rich church plate. The prince ordered his servants to take foreign guests and ambassadors to the **choir gallery** of the cathedral (an open gallery in the upper part of a church building) for them to get filled with respect for the sovereign capable of erecting such precious and majestic cathedral.



The Church of the Intercession on the River Nerl is rightly considered to be the pearl of the Vladimir-Suzdal white-stone architecture. It was built in 1165 **to commemorate** the victory over the Volga Bulgaria and in memory of Andrey Bogolyubsky's son Izyaslav killed in that campaign. The church was built in the lowland water meadows flooded by water every time during spring **high waters**. The builders had to pile up an artificial hill



before building the church. The Church of the Intercession is a small building of the hewn white stone. The slightly **elongated** church is crowned with the elaborate light **drum** cut with narrow windows and topped with the helmet-like dome. The walls of the church are slightly **leaned** inward, that creates an illusion of great **height** and gives an impression of an extraordinary grace and weightlessness of the whole construction. The carved relief decoration is simple; the composition is the same on each of its three facades: in the central *zakomara* (the semi-circular upper section of outer walls) is the figure of the biblical King David sitting on the throne, on his both sides are two doves, under them there are the figures of lions, still lower below them are three women's masks.

The only **secular** construction that survived from the time of Andrey Bogolyubsky is the Golden Gate of Vladimir, built in 1158 – 1164. This structure, **giant** for those times, was both a triumphal arch for the festive entrance to the city and at the same time the essential element of the military-defensive complex of the capital city. On the left and on the right they were adjoined with powerful earthen ramparts of the fortification ring surrounding the city.



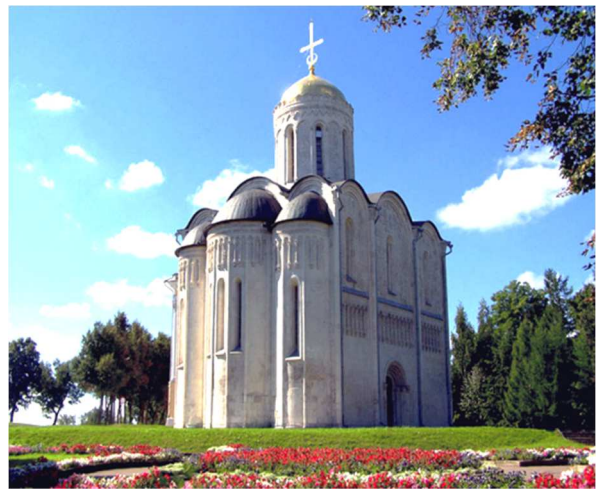
The Golden Gate built of white stone represents a huge cube cut with a high arch. For the defense purposes the **crosspiece** was made in the middle of the arch. The arch was closed with the two heavy gate folds made of thick oaks and bound with gilded copper plates, that's why the gate got the name of the Golden Gate. At the crosspiece level there was the lower wooden defensive platform from which the warriors could shoot the arrows at the enemy, throw stones and pour down boiling water. The steps built in the southern wall led to the top: to the upper defensive platform and the gate church.

Time, fires, enemy sieges brought grave damages to the monument. A gate underwent many restorations and partly lost its original outlook.

Speaking about St. Demetrius Cathedral (1194 – 1197), the chronicler proudly remarks that by that time there was no need looking for foreign masters to build it. Like the Church of the Intercession-on-the-Nerl, St. Demetrius Cathedral is a single-domed **four-pillared** church. This cathedral is strikingly **majestic** and **slender** in its own way; it has mighty power, beautiful harmony and manly proportionality.

St. Demetrius Cathedral is a court church in luxurious decorative **attire**. Its walls are covered with sculptural decor. The carved ornaments

**entwine** the columns of the blind arcading, climb up to the *zako*maras – semicircular tops of the facades – and then go up the drum. The **lacelike** carvings cover almost the whole building, giving it the look of a gigantic precious treasure **casket**. Plots of sculptural reliefs are diverse: King David, the psalm-singer, as on the Church of the Intercession, or,



according to another version, the son of King David, the wise king Solomon, the biblical author of “five thousand songs”; Alexander the Great, ascending the skies; Vsevolod III on the throne, surrounded by his kneeling sons. And in addition to all this there are beasts, birds, the most fanciful plants, lions with blossoming tails, geese with **intertwined** necks.

Writing came to our land together with Christianity. In the palaces of Andrey Bogolyubsky, Vsevolod and his sons (especially in that of Constantine) there were the libraries containing both translated books and original works of church and secular character. As it was testified by the chronicler during the fire of 1227 in Vladimir many books were burnt. The monasteries were the centers of written culture. Obviously, first literate people, except for princes and some persons from princely administration, were monks.

It is known, that at the court of Prince Konstantin Vsevolodovich at one time there was even a school where the **monks** both the Russians and Greeks worked teaching the youngsters. Konstantin, the elder son of Vsevolod III, was a remarkable personality in this respect. The chronicles named him Constantine the Wise. There are reasons to believe, that this prince took an active part in the writing chronicles. Brief records about local events in Vladimir (or Suzdal) were taken, probably, from the beginning of 12<sup>th</sup> century. Later on they were replaced by joined chronicles or codices, such as the Vladimir codex carried till 1206. Probably, it was compiled in 1212 – 1215 under the guidance of Konstantin Vsevolodovich.

The Vladimir codex was compiled of the fragments of various chronicles. One can point out abstracts from the early Kiev codices of the 11<sup>th</sup> century, “The Tale of the Bygone Years” of the beginnings of the 12<sup>th</sup> century, the chronicle of the events of the times of Vladimir Monomach and his son Mstislav, the chronicles of Yuri Dolgoruky, Andrey Bogolyubsky and Vsevolod the Big Nest.

As distinct from all other chronicles the Vladimir codex contained more than 600 miniatures, i. e. it was illuminated illustrated. Unfortunately, the codex itself preserved only as the copy of the 15<sup>th</sup> century made in Smolensk. The copy belonged to the Lithuanian Prince Radzivill and later to the Koenigsberg library where it was found by Peter I. That’s why the chronicle bears the name of Radzivill or Koenigsberg chronicle.

The Miniatures of Radzivill chronicle were made in different time and contain both original drawings of the 10<sup>th</sup> – 13<sup>th</sup> centuries from the Vladimir codex of 1206, and illustrations of the Smolensk artists of the 15<sup>th</sup> century. Sometimes the drawings narrate the facts more precisely than the text. For example, “The Tale of Andrey Bogolyubsky’s Murder” tells nothing about the prince wife’s participation in the plot, while the miniature shows a woman in princely attire holding in her hands the severed left hand of the prince. The text of “The Tale” informs that murderers severed the right hand. Anthropological research of remains of Andrey Bogolyubsky done during the opening of his tomb in the Vladimir Assumption Cathedral proved that the miniature had been correct.

Another Vladimir chronicle codex of the end of the 12<sup>th</sup> century came down to us as a part of the “Laurentian Chronicle”. The chroniclers of this codex repeatedly inserted **moralizing** and **pious** reasoning into the narration emphasizing, that their principality is under the protection of the icon of the Holy Virgin of Vladimir and the patron church of the Assumption of the Virgin where this icon was; that the Vladimir people were glorified by God all over the world “for their truth”. The Vladimir princes, as the chroniclers said, were full of piety and wisdom.

The Vladimir chronicles were not limited by the description of local events; it gave a wide picture of historical events all over the Russian land. Vladimir writers used all the literary genres known in that epoch: *the Lay, Prayer, Legend, and the Tale*. Some writings of the anonymous authors came down to our day: “The Prayer of Daniel the Prisoner”, “The Legend of the Victory over the Bulgarians in 1164 and Our Savior Festival”, the Legend of the Finding of the Relics of Leontius of Rostov”, “The Tale of Andrey Bogolyubsky’s Murder” and a number of other less known works. An outstanding monument of the gentry public thought is “The Prayer of Daniel the Prisoner” (“The Message of Daniel the Prisoner to the Great Prince Yaroslav Vsevolodovich”, the 13<sup>th</sup> century). Its author is a witty man fond of making jokes, he comes from serfs, but brilliantly educated, well-read and, according to his own words, is not so brave in battles as clever and strong in his thoughts, hates rich boyars. He cites the Holy Scripture and the chronicles from his memory, his vocabulary contains bookish as well as everyday words. The true name of the author of “Prayer” is not known. Daniel is not his name, but a pseudonym. The author of “The Tale of Andrey Bogolyubsky’s Murder” came from the circles close to the court of the Vladimir prince. He knew well the prince’s **milieu** (associates), life and household of Prince Andrey’s court. Some researchers are inclined to believe that Kuzma of Kiev mentioned in “The Tale” is the author. “The Tale” narrates in details about Andrey’s life and his policy: decoration of Vladimir, churches construction, strengthening the defense of the capital. And most importantly, it reveals the details of the plot and bloody murder of the prince by the conspirators.

**Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:**

- |                            |                                    |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1) appearance;             | a) внутреннее убранство;           |
| 2) country residence;      | b) возводить;                      |
| 3) fresco painting;        | c) фигурная плитка;                |
| 4) limestone;              | d) светское сооружение;            |
| 5) the technical faults;   | e) богослужение;                   |
| 6) Virgin Mary;            | f) одновременно;                   |
| 7) interior decorations;   | g) шлемовидные главы собора;       |
| 8) outlook;                | h) фон;                            |
| 9) weakness of the mortar; | i) Богородица;                     |
| 10) fortress;              | j) известняк;                      |
| 11) severe simplicity;     | k) бойница;                        |
| 12) to erect;              | l) фресковая роспись;              |
| 13) chronicler;            | m) триумфальная арка;              |
| 14) huge cube;             | n) надвратная церковь;             |
| 15) masterpiece;           | o) внешний вид;                    |
| 16) triumphal arch;        | p) вид;                            |
| 17) church service;        | q) технические неполадки;          |
| 18) lowland water meadow;  | r) искусственный холм;             |
| 19) ambassador;            | s) тесаный белый камень;           |
| 20) secular construction;  | t) доходы;                         |
| 21) original outlook;      | u) резное убранство;               |
| 22) figured tile;          | v) шедевр;                         |
| 23) loophole;              | w) крепость;                       |
| 24) Christianity;          | x) полукруглые завершения фасадов; |
| 25) gate church;           | y) огромный куб;                   |
| 26) background;            | z) загородная резиденция;          |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 27) carved ornaments;                    | aa) первоначальный вид;                 |
| 28) artificial hill;                     | bb) летописец;                          |
| 29) powerful earthen ramparts;           | cc) военно-оборонительный;<br>комплекс; |
| 30) incomes;                             | dd) низменная речная пойма;             |
| 31) simultaneously;                      | ee) слабость раствора;                  |
| 32) helmet-shaped domes;                 | ff) суровая простота;                   |
| 33) military-defensive<br>complex;       | gg) мощные земляные валы;               |
| 34) hewn white stone;                    | hh) посол;                              |
| 35) semicircular tops<br>of the facades. | ii) христианство.                       |

***Task 3. Consult the text and find the English equivalents of the following words and word combinations.***

Белокаменное зодчество; краткие записи о местных событиях; укрепление обороноспособности столицы; узкие, похожие на бойницы оконные проемы; огромные двустворчатые двери; арочные проемы; подробности заговора и кровавой расправы; стены храма лишены декоративных украшений; обветшалая постройка; «Повесть об убиении Андрея Боголюбского»; украшен скульптурными рельефами; летописный свод; «Моление Даниила Заточника»; оригинальные рисунки; выделил десятую долю доходов своей казны; «Сказание о победе над болгарами 1164 года и праздник Спаса», Лаврентьевская летопись; «Повесть временных лет»; женщина в княжеском одеянии; антропологическое исследование останков; яркий период культурной истории края; собор Успения Богородицы; подлинные шедевры искусства; «золотые ворота» Рождественского собора; полы выстланы майоликовыми плитками; белокаменный однокупольный храм Бориса и Глеба в Кидекше; узкие, щелевидные окна; могучая, прекрасная слаженность и муже-

ственная пропорциональность; резной узор рельефов; Спасо-Преображенский собор; суровый и неприступный облик; белокаменная церковь Георгия; посвященную тому же святому; Успенский собор; специалисты кирпичной кладки; белый тесаный известняк; аркатурный фриз; лента фресковой росписи; легендарный библейский храм царя Соломона; драгоценное убранство храма; церковь Покрова на Нерли; необычайная легкость и невесомость всей постройки; Дмитриевский собор; ажурная вязь; сюжеты скульптурных рельефов.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. In the 12<sup>th</sup> – the first half of the 13<sup>th</sup> century there was the brightest period of the ... history of the territory.

- a) social;                                      b) economic;                                      c) cultural.

2. The beginning of the stone construction was put by the Prince of Pereyaslavl ... .

- a) Andrey Bogolyubsky; b) Yuri Dolgoruky; c) Vladimir Monomach.

3. The most ancient monument of Russian architecture and the prototype of all Vladimir-Suzdal churches is the white-stone ... church of Sts. Boris and Gleb in Kideksha.

- a) five-domed;                                      b) three-domed;                                      c) one-domed.

4. The walls of the church of Sts. Boris and Gleb in Kideksha are ... decorative ornaments.

- a) in lack of;                                      b) rich in;                                      c) devoid of.

5. The architecture of ... served as a model for the Moscow architecture of the 14<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries.

- a) the Nativity cathedral;  
b) the Assumption cathedral;  
c) St. George Cathedral.

6. In ... the Assumption cathedral suffered a great damage during the fire.

- a) 1152;                                      b) 1230;                                      c) 1185.

7. ... on the River Nerl is rightly considered to be the pearl of the Vladimir-Suzdal white-stone architecture.

- a) the Cathedral of the Transfiguration of the Savior;
- b) the Cathedral of St. George;
- c) the Church of the Intercession.

8. The Church of the Intercession is a ... building of the hewn white stone.

- a) big;
- b) huge;
- c) small.

9. The Golden Gate was both a triumphal arch for the festive entrance to the city and at the same time the essential element of the ... of the capital city.

- a) religious life;
- b) military-defensive complex;
- c) decoration.

10. St. Demetrius Cathedral is a single-domed ... church.

- a) four-pillared;
- b) six-pillared;
- c) eight-pillared.

11. St. Demetrius Cathedral has ... .

- a) no relief work;
- b) a lot of decorative elements;
- c) wood carvings.

12. The ... were the centers of written culture.

- a) cathedrals;
- b) libraries;
- c) monasteries.

13. The only ... construction that survived from the time of Andrey Bogolyubsky is the Golden Gate of Vladimir, built in 1158 – 1164.

- a) white-stone;
- b) religious;
- c) secular.

14. Plots of sculptural reliefs of St. Demetrius Cathedral are ... .

- a) similar;
- b) diverse;
- c) simple.

15. Writing came to our land together with ... .

- a) stone construction;
- b) development of crafts;
- c) Christianity.



16. Obviously, first literate people, except for princes and some persons from princely administration, were ... .

- a) monks;                      b) craftsmen;                      c) merchants.

17. There are reasons to believe, that Prince ... took an active part in the writing chronicles.

- a) Vladimir Monomach;  
b) Vsevolod the Big Nest;  
c) Constantine Vsevolodovich.

18. Unfortunately, the Vladimir codex preserved only as the copy of the ... century made in Smolensk.

- a) 17<sup>th</sup>;                      b) 14<sup>th</sup>;                      c) 15<sup>th</sup>.

19. Anthropological research of remains of Andrey Bogolyubski done during the opening of his tomb in the Vladimir Assumption Cathedral proved that the miniatures of Radzivill chronicle had been ... .

- a) fictional;                      b) embellished;                      c) correct.

20. The arch of the Golden Gate was closed with the two heavy gate folds made of thick ... and bound with gilded copper plates, that's why the gate got the name of the Golden Gate.

- a) oak;                      b) pine;                      c) birch.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. In the 12<sup>th</sup> – the first half of the 13<sup>th</sup> century there was the decline of the cultural history of the territory.

2. At the turn of 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> centuries (between 1096 and 1105) the Prince Vladimir Monomach and the bishop of Pereyaslavl Efrem accompanying him initiated the building of the cathedral of the Assumption of the Holy Virgin in Suzdal.

3. The true masterpieces of the applied art in the beginning of 13<sup>th</sup> century are the Golden Gates of St. George Cathedral in Suzdal installed in the western and southern portals as well as the floors of the cathedral.

4. The floors in the cathedral of the Assumption of the Holy Virgin in Suzdal were covered with mosaic.

5. The most ancient monument of Russian architecture is the white-stone one-domed church of Sts. Boris and Gleb in Pereyaslavl, the prototype of all Vladimir-Suzdal churches.

6. In Yuri's time the walls of the church Sts. Boris and Gleb were painted.

7. The wooden church of St. George in Yuriev-Polsky was also built simultaneously with the city foundation and construction of a fortress, but in 1230 Prince Svyatoslav (a son of Vsevolod III) brought down the dilapidated building and on its place built (1230 – 1234) the new stone church dedicated to the same saint.

8. According to the chronicle all over its outside the church St. George had extremely beautiful carvings of mythological creatures.

9. The Assumption Cathedral was built by local builders.

10. Repairing of the Assumption Cathedral took ten years.

11. A special attention was paid to the southern facade of the Assumption Cathedral facing the city and it was decorated with lion masks, an emblem of regal force, the women's masks indicating the cathedral dedication to the Virgin Mary.

12. In the Assumption Cathedral there was the greatest Russian relic – the icon of the Holy Virgin of Vladimir, a masterpiece of the Greek art.

13. The bulbous domes of the Assumption Cathedral and its interior decorations shined with gold.

14. The Church of the Intercession on the River Nerl was built in 1165 to commemorate the victory over the Principality of Polotsk and in memory of Andrey Bogolyubsky's son Izyaslav killed in that campaign.

15. The slightly elongated the Church of the Intercession is crowned with the elaborate light drum cut with wide windows and topped with helmet-like domes.

16. The carved relief decoration of the Church of the Intercession is very complex.

17. The Golden Gate didn't undergo any restorations and retained its original look.

18. Brief records about local events in Vladimir (or Suzdal) were taken, probably, from the beginning of 15<sup>th</sup> century.

19. The Vladimir chronicles were limited by the description of local events.

20. One of the Vladimir chronicle codices of the end of 12<sup>th</sup> century came down to us as a part of the "Laurentian Chronicle".

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Who put the beginning of the stone construction in the Vladimir-Suzdal land?

2. What church was taken as a model for the cathedral of the Assumption of the Holy Virgin in Suzdal?

3. Why was the cathedral of the Assumption of the Holy Virgin destroyed?

4. Did Yuri Dolgoruky erect a new cathedral instead of the destroyed one?

5. When did the Suzdal cathedral get its present-day look?

6. What were the folding doors of the Golden Gates of the Nativity Cathedral covered with?

7. What was depicted on the copper plates of the Golden Gates?

8. What were the floors of the cathedral covered with?

9. When was the Church of Sts. Boris and Gleb in Kideksha built?

10. What decoration does the Church of Sts. Boris and Gleb have?

11. What does the interior of the Church of Sts. Boris and Gleb look like?

12. When did the fresco painting appear?

13. What emphasizes the stern and solid look of the Cathedral of Transfiguration of the Savior?

14. How was the Cathedral of St. George decorated?

15. When and by whom was the Cathedral of St. George built?
16. When was the Assumption Cathedral built?
17. How was the Assumption Cathedral constructed?
18. When did the Assumption Cathedral suffer a great damage?
19. What changes took place after its repairing?
20. What relict icon was there in the Assumption Cathedral?
21. What temple was the Assumption Cathedral compared to?
22. What were the reasons for the construction of the Church of the Intercession?
23. Does the Church of the Intercession have modest carvings?
24. What gives an illusion of great height and an impression of an extraordinary grace and weightlessness of the Church of the Intercession?
25. What was the only secular construction that survived from the time of Andrey Bogolyubsky's reign?
26. What role did the Golden Gate play in the history of our town?
27. How was the defensive function performed?
28. What plots of sculptural reliefs are there on the walls of St. Demetrius Cathedral?
29. Was there a school at the court of Prince Constantine Vsevolodovich?
30. Did Prince Constantine take part in writing chronicles?
31. What was the Vladimir codex compiled of?
32. What literary genres did the writers use?

***Task 7. Make a presentation about the culture development of the Vladimir-Suzdal Principality.***

UNIT 5  
**THE VLADIMIR-SUZDAL PRINCIPALITY IN THE PERIOD  
OF THE TATAR-MONGOL YOKE**

***Lesson 1. The Territory of the Vladimir-Suzdal Principality before  
the Invasion. Internecine Struggle***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) to endow with	❖ наделить, одарить
2) successor	❖ преемник
3) split up	❖ распадаться, раздробляться
4) internecine	❖ междоусобный
5) cart	❖ воз, подвода
6) famine	❖ голод
7) to detain	❖ задерживать
8) ambassador	❖ посол
9) serfdom	❖ крепостничество
10) to avenge	❖ отомстить
11) to ascend the throne	❖ взойти на престол
12) booty	❖ добыча
13) captives	❖ пленные

In the early 13<sup>th</sup> century, the territory of the Vladimir principality covered the huge area from the Oka in the south up to the Northern Dvina in the north, from Torzhok and Zubtsov in the west up to Gorodets and Nizhniy Novgorod in the east.

In the northwest the Vladimir-Suzdal principality bordered on the Novgorod lands, the part of Torzhok belonged to the Vladimir prince. In the south its neighbor was the Ryazan principality. The Ryazan possessions on the left bank of the Oka were limited by the Kolomna adjoining territory. To the west off Kolomna there were the Vladimir lands. In the east of the principality its natural border was the Volga and the Unzha, its left tributary.

The expansion of the Vladimir-Suzdal lands at the end of the 12<sup>th</sup> – beginning of the 13<sup>th</sup> centuries made it possible for the Great Prince Vsevolod **to endow** all his sons **with** the lands. In 1207 he gave Rostov and five other cities to his senior son Constantine. The senior son was to become the **successor** of the Great Prince. But Constantine wanted to make Rostov the center of the principality while Vsevolod thought that Vladimir should remain the main centre. Following the advice of the bishop John Vsevolod gave the title of the Great Prince and Vladimir to his next son Yuri Vsevolodovich.

Vsevolod the Big Nest died in 1212 on the 64<sup>th</sup> year of his life, having reigned in the Vladimir-Suzdal lands for 37 years.

Except Vladimir, Yuri got Bogolyubovo, Suzdal, Moscow, Gorodets, Sol Velikaya and Kostroma. The lands in the low flow of the Klyazma and the Unzha, probably, were also a part of the Great Principality of Vladimir. Till 1236 Yaroslav, the third Vsevolod's son, owned the Pereslavl principality. It included Pereslavl-Zalessky, Dimitrov, Tver, Zubtsov (in the upper flow of the Volga), Kosnyatin and Nerehta. Yaroslav, probably, also owned the cities of Shosha and Dubna, as well as the Vladimir parts in Torzhok and Volok Lamski (on the Lama).

Vladimir, the fourth son of Vsevolod, received Yuriev-Polsky. As a result of this division once uniform Rostov lands **split up** into a number of possessions. In 1213, the next year after Vsevolod's death, his sons began the **internecine** war. Constantine did not want to refuse his seniority and the title of the Great Prince; according to the chronicles he “knitted his eyebrows in anger at his brother Yuri”. Svyatoslav and Vladimir sided with Constantine.

In this situation Yuri tried to unite with Yaroslav Vsevolodovich. In 1214 Yaroslav was invited to the Novgorod throne. The Novgorod people sent the posadnik, tysyatski (chiliarch) and 10 “senior merchants” to make the agreement with the prince. However already in 1215 Yaroslav Vsevolodovich quarreled with the Novgorod boyars angry at their “willfulness”, and left Novgorod for Torzhok, whose part he possessed, and sent his deputy to Novgorod. Probably, like Andrey Bogolyubsky he wanted

to put down the role of an “old” city and to raise the role of a “younger” town – Torzhok.

To force the people of Novgorod to obey, Yaroslav Vsevolodovich forbade **carats** with bread passing to Novgorod and **famine** began there. Three times the people of Novgorod sent their representatives to Yaroslav with the request to return to the throne of Novgorod, but Yaroslav **detained ambassadors** and did not give the answer. Meanwhile famine was getting more widespread: people ate pine bark, moss, lime tree leaves; gave children in **serfdom**. According to the chronicles in the trading square, in the streets, in the fields – everywhere there were dead bodies, and the dogs were unable to eat them. Then the Novgorodians invited Prince Mstislav Udaloj (the Bold), one of the most influential leaders at that time. Yaroslav Vsevolodovich was married to a daughter of Mstislav (i. e., he was Mstislav’s son-in-law), but, in spite of the close relations, in 1216 Yaroslav Vsevolodovich and Mstislav Udaloj were about to start war. To help Mstislav, Constantine Vsevolodovich came from Rostov, as well as the troops from Pskov, Smolensk, and Kiev. To oppose them Yaroslav Vsevolodovich and Yuri Vsevolodovich brought the troops from Pereslavl, Tver, Murom, Gorodetz and Suzdal. The princes of Vladimir and Pereslavl were so sure in their victory, that started to divide all Russian cities between themselves even before fight. Prince Yuri wanted to take the Vladimir and Rostov lands and to give Novgorod to his brother Yaroslav, Smolensk to his brother Svyatoslav, Kiev to the princes of Chernigov, and to keep Galich for himself, as for the army of Mstislav and Constantine they were going “to shower them with the saddles”. On April 21, 1216 the two armies met at the river Lipitsa near the town of Yuryev-Polsky. Before the battle Constantine once again demanded returning of the seniority and the Vladimir throne. Mstislav insisted on Yaroslav’s troops withdrawing from Volok Lamsky and returning of the detained Novgorod merchants and boyars. Yuri and Yaroslav, sure in the victory, rejected these demands. According to the legend, before the battle the Novgorodians told Mstislav that they did not want to fight on horseback: “We want to fight on foot as our fathers fought on the Koloksha”. They threw off their boots and rushed on the enemy barefooted, the Suzdalians ran. The chronicles say that more than 9 thousand

people were killed in this battle. Yaroslav lost his helmet on the battlefield, his brother Yuri wearing only a shirt came galloping to Vladimir having ridden to death three horses on his way. He hoped to gather more warriors, but the resistance was useless: there were no troops in Vladimir and the city could not defend itself. Yuri only asked the townspeople not to give him up to his brother, Constantine Vsevolodovich, and to let him leave the city.

Yaroslav Vsevolodovich returned to Pereslavl and decided **to avenge** the defeat. According to his order the Novgorod and Smolensk merchants were seized and chained. About 150 people were killed.

As a result of these events Constantine Vsevolodovich gained the full control over the Vladimir-Suzdal principality. Yuri got possession of Gorodets in the eastern suburb of the Suzdal land. Yaroslav reigned in Pereslavl-Zalessky. Mstislav returned to Novgorod. In 1217 Constantine, being afraid that his young sons could not keep power, made the agreement with Yuri according to which after Constantine's death the title of the Great Prince of Vladimir was to pass to Yuri. In 1218 Yuri Vsevolodovich again **ascended the Vladimir throne** and occupied it until his death in 1238.

Eventually in the Vladimir-Suzdal land there appeared independent principalities of Vladimir, Rostov, Kostroma, Starodub, Pereslavl, Suzdal and Yuryev-Polsky, whose princes recognized the Vladimir prince as their "elder" or "the father".

In 1223 in Novgorod as a result of the struggle the Suzdal faction won, Yuri sent his brother Yaroslav to Novgorod and so restored the Vladimir-Suzdal princes' control over Novgorod.

Thus, by the beginning of the 20s of the 13<sup>th</sup> century Northeast Russia had overcome internecine wars and was united again and became almost as powerful, as in the days of Vsevolod the Big Nest.

In 1220 there started the war of the Vladimir-Suzdal land with the Volga Bulgarians (the Bulgarians captured Ustyug in 1217, but Vladimir-Suzdal princes at this time were too busy dividing their possessions and could not resist the enemy). In that campaign the troops of Yuri Vsevolodovich, Svyatoslav Vsevolodovich of Yuryev-Polsky, Yaroslav Vsevolodovich of Pereslavl-Zalessky, their nephews Vasilko Constantinovich of Rostov and Svyatoslav Davydovich, a son of Murom



Prince Davyd Svyatoslavovich, participated. The army gathered at the mouth of the river Oka and went by boats down the Volga to the town of Oshel. The city was burnt down. With huge **booty** and plenty of **captives** the Russian armies returned to Vladimir. In winter, after the arrival of the Bulgarian ambassadors with gifts, peace was made.

After that successful campaign to strengthen the safety of the eastern borders of the principality Yuri Vsevolodovich founded the town of Nizhny Novgorod at the confluence of the Oka and the Volga, where Russian troops usually gathered. During the eight successive years the stone church and a monastery were constructed there.

The foundation of the fortress caused some clashes with the Mordovian population. In 1226 Yuri sent his brothers Svyatoslav of Yuryev-Polsky and Ivan “against the Mordovians” and they managed to seize some Mordovian villages. Thus, by the 30s of the 13<sup>th</sup> century the power of the Vladimir-Suzdal princes had spread up to the mouth of the Oka and, probably, further – down the Volga. Some Mordovian princes became vassals of Yuri Vsevolodovich. These achievements were sealed by the agreement with the Volga Bulgarians in 1230. At the same time the Vladimir-Suzdal principality expanded its possessions in the northeast. In 1238 here Galich Merskiy was mentioned for the first time. Probably, the Rostov possessions also extended a little bit in the area of Ustyug. The process of the Russian influence expansion further to the east from the area between the Volga and the Oka was interrupted by the Tatar-Mongol invasion.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1) border on;   | a) ГОЛОД;       |
| 2) tributary;   | b) ДОБЫЧА;      |
| 3) endow with;  | c) ПОСОЛ;       |
| 4) successor;   | d) НАДЕЛИТЬ;    |
| 5) internecine; | e) ГРАНИЧИТЬ С; |
| 6) famine;      | f) ЗАГНАТЬ;     |

- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 7) ambassador;                  | g) пленный;                |
| 8) serfdom;                     | h) наместник;              |
| 9) avenge the defeat;           | i) приток;                 |
| 10) booty;                      | j) группировка;            |
| 11) captive;                    | k) вывод;                  |
| 12) endow with;                 | l) задержать;              |
| 13) deputy;                     | m) заковать в цепь;        |
| 14) to shower with the saddles; | n) при слиянии;            |
| 15) withdrawing;                | o) взойти на престол;      |
| 16) reject;                     | p) окраина;                |
| 17) detain;                     | q) отвергнуть;             |
| 18) ride to death;              | r) в устье;                |
| 19) chain;                      | s) наделить, одарить;      |
| 20) at the mouth;               | t) крепостничество;        |
| 21) suburb;                     | u) закидать седлами;       |
| 22) ascend the throne;          | v) междоусобный;           |
| 23) faction;                    | w) отомстить за поражение; |
| 24) at the confluence.          | x) преемник.               |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. Расширение территории Владимиро-Суздальской земли в конце XII – начале XIII века дало возможность великому князю Всеволоду выделить земли всем своим сыновьям.

2. Старший сын должен был стать преемником великого князя.

3. В результате раздела некогда единая Ростовская земля распалась на ряд владений.

4. Чтобы заставить новгородцев повиноваться, Ярослав Всеволодович запретил пропускать в Новгород возы с хлебом. Начался голод.

5. Между тем голод усиливался: люди ели сосновую кору, мох, липовый лист; отдавали своих детей в холопы.

6. Переславский и владимирский князья были настолько уверены в своей победе, что еще до битвы начали делить между собой все русские города.

7. Накануне сражения Константин еще раз потребовал возвращения ему старшинства и владимирского стола.

8. Скинув сапоги, босыми устремились они на противников; сюздальцы бежали.

9. Ярослав потерял на поле боя шлем, его брат Юрий прискакал во Владимир в одной сорочке, загнав по пути трех коней.

10. Он надеялся собрать еще ратников, но сопротивление было бесполезно: дружины во Владимире не осталось, город не мог обороняться.

11. Таким образом, к началу 20-х годов XIII века Северо-Восточная Русь, преодолев усобицы, была вновь объединена и стала почти столь же могущественной, как и во времена Всеволода Большое Гнездо.

12. Зимой, после прихода болгарских послов с дарами, был заключен мир.

13. Процесс распространения русского влияния из Волго-Окского междуречья на восток был оборван монголо-татарским нашествием.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. In the early 13<sup>th</sup> century, the territory of the Vladimir principality covered the ... area from the Oka in the south up to the Northern Dvina in the north.

- a) small;                                  b) huge;                                  c) average.

2. In the south the neighbor of the Vladimir-Suzdal principality was the ... principality.

- a) Ryazan;                                  b) Moscow;                                  c) Novgorod.

3. The ... son was to become the successor of the Great Prince.

- a) younger;                                  b) middle;                                  c) senior.

4. Yaroslav Vsevolodovich forbade carts with ... passing to Novgorod.

- a) fruit;    b) meat;    c) bread.

5. The princes of Vladimir and Pereslavl were so sure in their victory, that started to ... all Russian cities between themselves even before fight.

- a) divide;                      b) take;                      c) conquer.

6. On April 21, ... the two armies met at the River Lipitsa near the town of Yuryev-Polsky.

- a) 1116;                      b) 1216;                      c) 1316.

7. In the Vladimir-Suzdal land there appeared independent principalities of Vladimir, Rostov, Kostroma, Starodub, Pereslavl, Suzdal and Yuryev-Polsky, whose princes recognized the ... prince as their “elder” or “the father”.

- a) Vladimir;                      b) Rostov;                      c) Suzdal.

8. By the beginning of the 20s of the 13<sup>th</sup> century Northeast Russia had ... internecine wars.

- a) begun;                      b) continued;                      c) overcome.

9. In 1220 there started the war of the Vladimir-Suzdal land with the ... .

- a) Volga Bulgarians;                      b) Byzantine empire;                      c) Tatar-Mongols.

10. Yuri Vsevolodovich founded the town of ... at the confluence of the Oka and the Volga, where Russian troops usually gathered.

- a) Murom;                      b) Nizhny Novgorod;                      c) Ryazan.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. The expansion of the Vladimir-Suzdal lands at the end of the 12<sup>th</sup> – beginning of 13<sup>th</sup> centuries made it possible for the Great Prince Yuri Dolgoruky to endow all his sons with the lands.

2. The senior son was to become the successor of the Great Prince.

3. Vsevolod gave Vladimir and the title of the Great Prince to his second son Yuri.

4. Vsevolod the Big Nest had been reigning in the Vladimir-Suzdal lands for 27 years.

5. In 1213, the next year after Vsevolod’s death, his sons began the internecine war.

6. In 1215 Yaroslav Vsevolodovich quarreled with the Rostov boyars.
7. The chronicles say that more than 9 thousand people were killed in the battle at the river Lipitsa.
8. By the beginning of the 20s of the 13<sup>th</sup> century Northeast Russia had overcome internecine wars and was united again.
9. In 1220 the Russian armies defeated the Volga Bulgarians.
10. The foundation of the fortress in Nizhniy Novgorod caused some clashes with the Mordovian population.
11. By the 30s of the 14<sup>th</sup> century the power of the Vladimir-Suzdal princes spread up to the mouth of the Oka.
12. The process of the Russian influence expansion further to the east from the area between the Volga and the Oka was interrupted by the Tatar-Mongol invasion.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. What territory did the Vladimir principality cover in the early 13<sup>th</sup> century?
2. What did the Vladimir-Suzdal principality border on in the early 13<sup>th</sup> century?
3. What town did Vsevolod want to remain the main centre of the principality?
4. Whom did Vsevolod give Vladimir and the title of the Great Prince?
5. Why did Rostov lands split up into a number of possessions?
6. When did Vsevolod's sons begin the internecine war?
7. Why did Yaroslav Vsevolodovich quarrel with the Novgorod boyars?
8. What did Yaroslav Vsevolodovich do to force the people of Novgorod to obey?
9. Why did famine begin in Novgorod?
10. What prince did the Novgorodians invite?
11. Why did the princes of Vladimir and Pereslavl start to divide all Russian cities between themselves even before fight?
12. Where did the battle take place on April 21, 1216?

13. Who won this battle?
14. How did Yaroslav Vsevolodovich avenge his defeat?
15. What independent principalities appeared in the Vladimir-Suzdal land?
16. When was the Vladimir-Suzdal princes' control over Novgorod restored?
17. When did Northeast Russia become united again?
18. Was the campaign against the Volga Bulgarians in 1220 successful?

## ***Lesson 2. The Intrusion of the Tatar-Mongols and the Heroic Defense of Vladimir. The Yoke Establishment***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) refugee	❖ беженец
2) stake	❖ кол
3) watch regiment	❖ сторожевой полк
4) retreat	❖ отступить
5) besiege	❖ осадить
6) take captive	❖ взять в плен
7) surrender	❖ сдаться
8) slaughter	❖ убить, заколоть
9) brushwood	❖ хворост
10) breach	❖ брешь, пролом
11) sortie	❖ вылазка
12) battering-ram	❖ стенобитное орудие
13) stone-hurling weapon	❖ камнеметное орудие
14) perish	❖ погибнуть
15) detachment	❖ отряд
16) reconnaissance	❖ разведка
17) ambush	❖ засада
18) torture	❖ мучить
19) yoke	❖ иго
20) appanage	❖ удельный

In 1223 the Tatar-Mongols appeared on the southern boundaries of the Russian lands. The Great Prince Yuri Vsevolodovich sent the Rostov boyars to the battle at the River Kalka, but on the way they got the news about the defeat of the Russian troops and did not participate in the battle.

In 1236 the Tatar-Mongols attacked the Volga Bulgaria. The huge stream of **refugees** rushed to the Vladimir principality in search of protection. Prince Yuri allowed them to settle in his lands, mainly in the towns of the Volga region.

In December 1237 the Mongols intruded the Ryazan principality. Then for the first time the conquerors put forward the demand of the tenth of everything “in people, in princes, and in horses...”. The Ryazan princes sent their people to Vladimir with the message of the attack and the request for help. Ryazan was taken by storm and burnt out. Only a small group of Ryazan people with Prince Roman Ingvarevich could reach Kolomna. The Kolomna Kremlin at the confluence of the rivers Moskva and Oka was to become a barrier on the way of the Tatar-Mongols. Hiding behind the defenses of sharpened **stakes** dug into the ground there were the Vladimir regiments led by Vsevolod Yurievich, a son of the Vladimir Prince, the Moscow troops with Prince Vladimir Yurievich, the troops from Novgorod and Pronsk. On January 16, 1238 near Kolomna there was “a great battle”. The **watch regiment** led by voivode Yeremei Glebovich met the first attack, after that all the Russian united forces moved. At first the Russian regiments forced the troops of khan Kulkan to **retreat**.

The Khan himself was deadly wounded (he was the only one of Genghis Khan clan who was killed in the Russian campaign). However, Batu restored the fighting order, and soon the battle was over with the total defeat of the Russian forces. Prince Roman, the younger son of the Vladimir Prince, and voivode Yeremei were killed. Vladimir Yurievich with the surviving retinue and voivode Phillip Nyanka hid behind the walls of Moscow, and Vsevolod Yurievich escaped to Vladimir with a small group of people.

On January 15 Batu **besieged** Moscow and in five days burnt it down. Voivode Phillip Nyanka was killed; prince Vladimir was **taken captive**. On the ice of the river Batu’s army went to Vladimir. Prince Yuri

Vsevolodovich left his sons Vsevolod and Mstislav and voivode Peter Oslyadyukovich in the city, while he himself and his three nephews, the sons of Constantine went to the north of the principality and stopped on the river Sit.

In the morning on February 3, 1238 Khan Batu and all his troops approached Vladimir. First there was an attempt to make the townspeople **surrender** at the guarantee of preservation of their life and property. Instead of the answer the people of Vladimir shot arrows at the Tatar-Mongols. The Mongols responded with the same. When the shooting was over, they brought the captive prince Vladimir closer to the gate. His brothers Vsevolod and Mstislav wanted to come out immediately and begin the battle, but voivode Oslyadyukovich kept them from doing it. Prince Vladimir was **slaughtered** before the eyes of the city defenders in front of the Golden Gate.

The main forces of Khan Batu were located opposite the Golden Gate; Khan put up his tent on the top of Studyenaya Gora.

On February 4 the Tatar-Mongols made the first attempt to rush into the city through the Golden Gate, but their attacks were beaten off. On the same day the part of Batu's troops went to Bogolyubovo and Suzdal; both towns were seized, ruined and burnt out.

Next day Batu's army began the storm of the city opposite the Church of the Savior at the western side. In this place the moat was dry, and besiegers easily filled it with **brushwood**. The storm of the city wall lasted all day. The Mongols managed to make a **breach**, but the city defenders managed to close it and beat off the storm.

On February 6 Khan ordered to surround the city with the wooden fence not to allow a sudden **sortie** of defenders. Simultaneously against the western wall the **battering-rams** were mounted, the part of which had already been used on February 5, as well as **stone-hurling weapons**. On the 7<sup>th</sup> of February with the sunrise the storm of the city was renewed. This time the besiegers began to attack the city from all the directions. Fights were fought at the Golden Gate, at the old breach, at the Silver, Irina, Copper and Volga Gates. The number of the besiegers surpassed the number of the city



defenders. And before the midday they seized the part of the city from the Golden Gate up to the Monomach's fortress. On the heels of the retreating city defenders the Tatar-Mongols rushed into the central part of Vladimir and seized the city kremlin (detinets). Princess Agathia, her daughters, daughters-in-law, grandsons, and bishop Metrofanis closed themselves in the Assumption Cathedral and **perished** in the fire and smoke. Both princes, Vsevolod and Mstislav, were also killed. Vladimir was ruined and burnt out. Many Vladimir people were killed. Those defenders, who were not killed, were taken prisoners. As a chronicler wrote, the Mongols drove them to their camps barefoot, without warm clothes, dying from the frost.

After the seize of Vladimir Batu sent his troops to capture Yuriev-Polsky, Starodub Klyazmensky (on the Klyazma), Pereslavl-Zalessky and other cities. All the February long the Vladimir lands were burning, the fire was destroying cities, towns and villages.

Meanwhile the Great Prince of Vladimir Yuri Vsevolodovich gathered forces to struggle against the enemy in northern regions of the principality. In the old hill-fort near Kostroma, on the bank of the river Sit, the Prince made his camp. Here he expected to receive reinforcement and to wait for the new regiments from Novgorod the Great where his brother Yaroslav reigned. Everyone who was able to hold the weapon went to the river Sit. Having received the news about the capture of Rostov and Uglich, Yuri Vsevolodovich called the council on which it was decided to send out the **detachment** consisting of three thousand people with voivode Dorozh at the head as a **reconnaissance** party. However, the detachment fell into an **ambush** and was almost completely exterminated.

On the 4<sup>th</sup> of March 1238 the Tatar-Mongol troops suddenly attacked Yuri's camp, and, despite the heroism shown by the Russian soldiers, the enemy won a victory. The Vladimir Prince Yuri Vsevolodovich, voivode Zhiroslav and many other military leaders fell in the battle, Vasilko, the son of the Rostov Prince, was taken prisoner and **tortured** to death for his refusal to serve Batu.

The gloomy epoch of the Tatar-Mongol **yoke** began. After the death of Yuri Vsevolodovich, the throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir passed to

his brother Yaroslav. He came to the burnt Vladimir, buried the dead, and distributed the cities' thrones among his relatives. In order of seniority, he gave Suzdal to his brother Svyatoslav. Starodub was given to his younger brother Ivan, who became the first **appanage** prince of Starodub; Rostov was given to Constantine's descendants. Prevention of the new Tatar-Mongol intrusions into the territory of the principality became the primary goal of the Vladimir Prince. However, in 1239 Khan Batu ruined the cities of Murom and Gorokhovets with the suburbs (Gorokhovets belonged to the Vladimir Assumption Cathedral at that time).

After Batu's campaigns to South-West Russia the yoke or a system of Russia's dependence from khans of the Golden Horde began to form. The basic forms of dependence were granting a gold yarlyk by khans, a patent for the right to be the Great Prince, and the payment of the tribute by Russia to the Golden Horde. The gold yarlyk was a gilded oval plate with a hole for which it could be suspended. It meant that its owner became "the elder" among Russian princes. All the other princes should have submitted to him; because in case of need the troops of the Golden Horde could come to help the Great Prince.

The first Russian prince to get the gold yarlyk was Yaroslav in 1243. Batu met Prince Yaroslav in the Horde "with honor", declared him "the elder to all the princes in Russia". In two years Yaroslav went to the Great Khan Guyuk in Karakorum. In the autumn of 1246, he was going back to Russia, and before the departure Khan's mother Turakina personally invited and treated Yaroslav. And in seven days, already on the way home, the Great Prince of Vladimir Yaroslav fell ill and died, his body turned blue, which testified that he had been poisoned.

After Yaroslav's death two Great Principalities: that of Vladimir and that of Kiev were established. The Great Prince of Vladimir had more power.

There was a constant struggle for the patent for the Great Principality, and khans used it successfully. They did not let the Great Prince of Vladimir gain too much power, but at the same time did not allow appanage princes to become independent.

**Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:**

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) intrude;               | a) сторожевой полк;     |
| 2) refugees;              | b) осаждавшие;          |
| 3) sharpened stakes;      | c) ров;                 |
| 4) fighting order;        | d) пленный;             |
| 5) besiege;               | e) захватчик;           |
| 6) watch;                 | f) беженцы;             |
| 7) capture;               | g) одновременно;        |
| 8) seize;                 | h) вторгаться;          |
| 9) besiegers;             | i) камнеметное орудие;  |
| 10) brushwood;            | j) подчиняться;         |
| 11) moat;                 | k) боевой порядок;      |
| 12) sortie;               | l) остроконечные колья; |
| 13) simultaneously;       | m) засада;              |
| 14) battering-ram;        | n) иго;                 |
| 15) stone-hurling weapon; | o) разведка;            |
| 16) reconnaissance;       | p) осадить;             |
| 17) ambush;               | q) стенобитное орудие;  |
| 18) yoke;                 | r) вылазка;             |
| 19) appanage;             | s) хворост;             |
| 20) submit.               | t) удельный.            |

**Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.**

1. Огромный поток беженцев ринулся во Владимирское княжество в поисках защиты.
2. Тогда завоеватели впервые выдвинули требование десятины от всего – «в людях, и в князях, и в конях...».
3. Рязань была взята штурмом и сожжена дотла.
4. Под Коломной и произошла 16 января 1238 года «сеча велика».
5. Русские полки первыми потеснили отряд хана Кулькана.

6. Сначала была предпринята попытка склонить владимирцев к мирной сдаче города при гарантии сохранения жизни и имущества.

7. Основные силы хана Батыя были расположены напротив Золотых ворот, свой шатер хан поставил на Студеной горе.

8. 6 февраля хан приказал окружить город деревянным тыном, чтобы не допустить внезапной вылазки защитников.

9. Осаждавшие численно превосходили защитников города.

10. На плечах отступавших защитников монголо-татары ворвались в центральную часть Владимира и захватили детинец.

11. Татары «ведя босых и без покрывала в станы свои, умирающих от мороза», – записал летописец.

12. Весь февраль горела Владимирская земля, в огне рушились города и села, деревни.

13. Однако отряд попал в засаду и почти полностью был истреблен.

14. Основной задачей владимирского князя стало предотвращение новых вторжений монголо-татар в пределы княжества.

15. После походов Батыя на Юго-Западную Русь стало формироваться иго – система зависимости Руси от ханов Золотой Орды.

16. Золотой ярлык – это позолоченная пластина с округлыми краями и дырочкой, за которую ее можно было подвешивать.

#### ***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. In 1223 the Tatar-Mongols appeared on the ... boundaries of the Russian lands.

a) northern;                              b) eastern;                              c) southern.

2. In December ... the Mongols intruded the Ryazan principality.

a) 1236;                              b) 1237;                              c) 1238.

3. The ... princes sent their people to Vladimir with the message of the attack and the request for help.

a) Ryazan;                              b) Rostov;                              c) Moscow.

4. On January 15 Batu besieged Moscow and in ... days burnt it down.

a) three;                              b) four;                              c) five.

5. In the morning on February 3, ... Khan Batu and all his troops approached Vladimir.

- a) 1237;                                      b) 1238;                                      c) 1239.

6. First there was an attempt to make the townspeople to ... at the guarantee of preservation of their life and property.

- a) surrender;                                      b) pay tribute;                                      c) fight.

7. The main forces of Khan Batu were located opposite the ... .

- a) Assumption Cathedral;      b) Kremlin;                                      c) Golden Gate.

8. On February 6 Khan ordered to surround the city with the ... not to allow a sudden sortie of defenders.

- a) wooden fence;                                      b) troops;                                      c) battering-ram.

9. The number of the besiegers ... the number of the city defenders.

- a) diminished;                                      b) surpassed;                                      c) increased.

10. Everyone who was able to hold the weapon went to the river ... .

- a) Volga;                                      b) Sit;                                      c) Klyazma.

11. After the death of Yuri Vsevolodovich the throne of Great Princes of Vladimir passed to his brother ...

- a) Constantine;                                      b) Svyatoslav;                                      c) Yaroslav.

12. Prevention of the new Tatar-Mongol intrusions into the territory of the principality became the primary ... of the Vladimir Prince.

- a) goal;                                      b) message;                                      c) deal.

13. The basic forms of ... were granting a gold yarlyk by khans and the payment of the tribute by Russia to the Golden Horde.

- a) independence;                                      b) dependence;                                      c) ruling.

14. The gold yarlyk meant that its owner became the ... among Russian princes.

- a) "younger";                                      b) "middle";                                      c) "elder".

15. After Yaroslav's death two Great Principalities: that of Vladimir and that of ... were established.

- a) Kiev;                                      b) Rostov;                                      c) Novgorod.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. In 1223 the Tatar-Mongols appeared on the eastern boundaries of the Russian lands.

2. The Rostov boyars participated in the battle at the River Kalka.

3. In December 1237 the Mongols intruded the Ryazan principality.

4. Khan Kulkan was the only one of Genghis Khan clan who was killed in the Russian campaign.

5. The battle at Kolomna was over with the total defeat of the Tatar-Mongol forces.

6. On the ice of the river Batu's army went from Moscow to Vladimir.

7. In the morning on February 3, 1248 Khan Batu and all his troops approached Vladimir.

8. The people of Vladimir shot arrows at the Tatar-Mongols.

9. On February 4 the Tatar-Mongols made the first attempt to rush into the city through the Golden Gate.

10. The number of the defenders of Vladimir surpassed the number of the city besiegers.

11. All the February long the Vladimir lands were burning, the fire was destroying cities, towns and villages.

12. On the 4<sup>th</sup> of March 1238 the Vladimir Prince Yuri Vsevolodovich, voivode Zhiroslav and many other military leaders fell in the battle on the bank of the river Sit.

13. In 1240 Khan Batu ruined the cities of Murom and Gorokhovets with the suburbs.

14. After Batu's campaigns to Southwest Russia the yoke began to form.

15. The basic form of Russia's dependence from khans of the Golden Horde was granting a silver yarlyk by khans.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. When did the Tatar-Mongols appear on the southern boundaries of the Russian lands?
2. Was Ryazan taken by the Mongols in 1237?
3. Did the Russian forces win a victory over the Mongols near Kolomna in 1238?
4. Who besieged Moscow and burnt it down in 1238?
5. When did Khan Batu and his troops approach Vladimir?
6. When did the Tatar-Mongols make the first attempt to rush into Vladimir through the Golden Gate?
7. What weapons did the Tatar-Mongols use against the city defenders?
8. Did the number of the city defenders surpass the number of the besiegers?
9. Who perished in the fire and smoke in the Assumption Cathedral?
10. What cities of the Vladimir-Suzdal land were captured by Batu's troops?
11. Who took part in the battle on the bank of the river Sit in March 1238?
12. What became the primary goal of the Vladimir Prince Yaroslav?
13. What did the yoke mean?
14. Who was the first Russian prince to get the gold yarlyk?
15. What Great Principality had more power: that of Vladimir or that of Kiev?

***Task 7. Imagine that you are a tour guide in the Golden Gate. Tell foreign tourists about the siege of Vladimir by the Tatar-Mongols.***

### *Lesson 3. The Reign of Alexander Nevsky*

*Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:*

1) ascended the throne	❖ взойти на престол
2) take offence	❖ обидеться
3) sworn brother	❖ побратим
4) host	❖ войско, рать
5) punitive	❖ карательный
6) rebellious	❖ непокорный
7) reconcile	❖ помириться
8) retinue nobility	❖ дружинная знать
9) townspeople assembly	❖ вече
10) butler	❖ дворецкий
11) printer	❖ печатник
12) waiter	❖ стольник
13) key keeper	❖ ключник
14) groom	❖ конюший
15) saddler	❖ седельничий
16) steward	❖ тиун, приказчик
17) live on	❖ кормиться
18) patent	❖ грамота
19) census	❖ перепись
20) expel	❖ изгнать
21) drafting	❖ набор, призыв на военную службу

In 1247 Yaroslav's brother Svyatoslav Vsevolodovich **ascended the throne** of the Great Prince of Vladimir. The sons of Yaroslav – Alexander Nevsky and Andrey – after their father's death went first to the Golden Horde, and then to Mongolia. There they received the patents: Alexander to reign in Kiev, Andrey in Vladimir. Alexander Nevsky was dissatisfied with such decision and, probably, **took offence** not at the Mongols (the only son of Batu Sartak, a baptized tsarevitch, even became Alexander's **sworn**



**brother**), but at his brother, he explained unfair distribution of patents by his intrigues. Svyatoslav deprived of the throne of the Great Prince tried to defend the rights in the Golden Horde, but achieved nothing and died in 1252.

As Kiev had lost the former significance for a long time, Alexander Yaroslavovich did not go to the former capital of Russia, and returned to Novgorod whose prince he remained. In 1250 the Great Prince Andrey Yaroslavovich married a daughter of Daniel of Galicia. The union of north-east and south-west Russia could represent a threat for the Horde. Alexander Nevsky believed that Russia did not have enough forces to struggle for independence, therefore it would be better to retain good relations with the Horde. Andrey thought differently. He as well as his father-in-law Prince of Galicia Daniel Romanovich was going to make a union with Catholic powers. In 1252 unexpectedly the revolt against the Tatar-Mongols began in Vladimir and later on spread to some other cities. It is known, that Andrey supported that revolt.

At this time Alexander Nevsky was in the Horde. In 1252 in the northeast there appeared the Mongolian **host** of Tsarevitch Nevruy (the Nevruy host). Some historians consider that **punitive** expedition was provoked by Alexander Nevsky himself, he complained that Prince Andrey, did not want to pay the tribute to the Horde (some chronicles say). In opinion of some other researchers, the Mongols decided to deal at one blow with **rebellious** princes of Vladimir and Galicia (at the same time with the Nevruy host one more army was sent to south-west Russia). This point of view is confirmed indirectly by the fact that although the Mongols ruined Pereslavl and Suzdal, they did not touch other cities.

Daniel of Galich could not help his son-in-law. Andrey ran to Novgorod, but Novgorod people did not accept him. Prince took shelter in Sweden. The throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir passed over to Alexander Nevsky. Soon Alexander **reconciled** with his brother and gave him Suzdal. Andrey did not try to resist to the Horde any more.

The Tatar-Mongols did not interfere with the internal affairs of the Russian lands. In hands of the Great Prince of Vladimir there was the court, legislation, and army. Alexander Nevsky went down in history as an

outstanding figure of the medieval Russia, a military leader, a diplomat. The exact date of his birth is unknown, approximately 1220. He was born in Pereslavl on the coast of Pleshcheevo Lake. Alexander spent his young years in Novgorod where he reigned first together with his brother Fyodor, and since the age of 16 alone.

The prince had a council consisting of his **retinue nobility** (boyars), the townspeople and clergy. The prince governed cities and towns, large and small villages through his servants. In the capital city of Vladimir and in Pereslavl there were prince's palaces, courts, houses of boyars. Here the **townspeople assemblies** also gathered. At the court there lived clerks governing prince's lands, estates and affairs: **butlers, printers** (chancellors), **waiters, key keepers, grooms, saddlers**. The prince appointed them as his deputies in different areas and towns of the principality – **posadniks, voivodes and tysiatskiis** (chiliarchs) in charge of the army, **stewards** in charge of the court, treasury, property who **lived on** these posts. The prince's incomes were formed by direct and indirect taxes. The main direct tax was the tribute paid by each country district, small and large villages and towns. The tribute was collected from “the smoke”, each peasant household. In the peace time the relations with the Horde were limited to the payment of the tribute (“the Horde yield”) and getting **patents** (“yarlyks”) to reign. Khans sent their deputies (“baskaks”) to Russian principalities whose chief duty was also collecting the tribute.

In 1257 the officials of the Great Khan Munke arrived and began the **census** of the population first in the Vladimir Russia, and then and in other lands. “The counters” (so these officials were named in the Russian chronicles) should have taken all population into account for the definition of the tribute size and the number of soldiers Russia had to deliver to the Horde's auxiliary armies. Monks and clergy were excluded from the census, only Jewish rabbis were laid under the tribute alongside with all the rest population. In Rostov, Murom, Ryazan the census was conducted quietly, but the inhabitants of Novgorod refused to take part in the census, and then Alexander Nevsky came to Novgorod (1259) with the Suzdal regiments to suppress the rebellion. The rebellion in Novgorod was suppressed. But in 1262 mass movement directed against the Tatar-Mongols began in the north-

east of Russia. The discontent was caused by the abuse of Muslim merchants, who took the complete control of the tribute collection. They demanded double, sometimes even threefold tribute. According to the decisions of the townspeople assemblies in Rostov, Vladimir, Suzdal, Pereslavl, Yaroslavl the tax-collectors were **expelled**. The news of the revolt displeased the Horde, and the detachments of the Tatar-Mongols were ready to suppress the rebellion. Then Alexander Yaroslavovich went to the Horde for the fourth time. This time he went to deliver Russia from the performance of one of the heaviest duties – Russian soldiers **drafting** into the Golden Horde troops. Most likely, he succeeded in this.

In November 1263 on the way back from the Horde, Alexander Nevsky fell ill and stopped in the town of Gorodets on the Volga where he died on November 14. The body of the prince was brought to Vladimir. During the burial service Metropolitan Cyril exclaimed: “The sun of the Russian land has set, my children”. In the 18<sup>th</sup> century the remains of Alexander Nevsky were transferred to Petersburg with honors and buried in the Alexander Nevsky Laura. The orthodox church canonized Alexander Nevsky.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                           |                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1) ascend the throne;     | a) побратим;                        |
| 2) unfair distribution;   | b) конюший;                         |
| 3) deprive of the throne; | c) чиновник;                        |
| 4) the Nevruy host;       | d) взойти на престол;               |
| 5) sworn brother;         | e) наместник;                       |
| 6) take cover;            | f) подавить мятеж;                  |
| 7) reconcile;             | g) перепись населения;              |
| 8) clergy;                | h) Неврюева рать;                   |
| 9) Horde yield;           | i) стольник;                        |
| 10) townspeople assembly; | j) дружинная знать;                 |
| 11) butler;               | k) численники;                      |
| 12) waiter;               | l) несправедливое<br>распределение; |

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 13) retinue nobility;         | m) ордынский выход;          |
| 14) groom;                    | n) помириться;               |
| 15) deputy;                   | o) поставка воинов;          |
| 16) live on the post;         | p) лишить престола;          |
| 17) census of the population; | q) духовенство;              |
| 18) counters;                 | r) дворецкий;                |
| 19) official;                 | s) «кормиться» на должности; |
| 20) suppress the rebellion;   | t) укрыться;                 |
| 21) expel;                    | u) вече;                     |
| 22) soldiers drafting.        | v) изгнать.                  |

***Task 3. Consult the text and find the English equivalents of the following words and word combinations.***

Вступить на Владимирский великокняжеский стол; получить ярлык на княжение; недоволен таким решением; приписать несправедливое распределение столов проискам своего брата; изгнанный с великого княжения; отстаивать права в Золотой Орде; потерять свое прежнее значение; представлять угрозу для Орды; бороться за независимость; поддерживать добрые отношения с Ордой; склоняться к союзу с католическими державами; поддержать восстание; Неврюева рать; спровоцировать карательную экспедицию; расправиться одновременно с непокорными владимирским и галицким князьями; косвенно подтверждать; укрыться в Швеции; помириться; противостоять Орде; вмешиваться во внутреннее управление русских земель; суд, законодательство, войско; войти в историю как выдающийся деятель средневековой Руси, полководец, дипломат; дума, состоявшая из дружинной знати; чиновники, занятые управлением земли и делами княжеского хозяйства: дворские (дворецкие), печатники (канцлеры), стольники, ключники, конюшие, седельничьи; тиуны, управляющие судом, казной, имуществом; «кормиться» на этих должностях; прямые и косвенные налоги; взимать дань с «дыма»; получение грамот на княжение; учесть все население для определения размера дани и количества русских воинов, поставляемых в ордынские вспомогательные войска; усмирить

бунтовщиков; суздальские полки; массовое антиордынское движение; злоупотребления мусульманских купцов, взявших сбор ордынской дани на откуп; поставка русских воинов в золотоордынские отряды.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Alexander Nevsky believed that it would be better to ... good relations with the Horde.

- a) break;                      b) retain;                      c) submit.

2. In ... unexpectedly the revolt against the Tatar-Mongols began in Vladimir.

- a) 1242;                      b) 1252;                      c) 1262.

3. The Mongolian host of Tsarevitch Nevruy was a ... expedition.

- a) punitive;                      b) glorious;                      c) peaceful.

4. Alexander spent his young years in ... .

- a) Vladimir;                      b) Kiev;                      c) Novgorod.

5. In Vladimir and Pereslavl the ... assemblies gathered.

- a) countrymen;                      b) townspeople;                      c) clergy.

6. The prince's incomes were formed by direct and indirect ... .

- a) taxes;                      b) tithe;                      c) labours.

7. The tribute was collected from "the smoke", each ... household.

- a) craftsmen;                      b) nobility;                      c) peasant.

8. Khans sent to Russian principalities their deputies ("baskaks") whose chief duty was ... .

- a) punishment;                      b) giving advice;                      c) collecting the tribute.

9. In 1257 the officials of the Great Khan Munke arrived and began the ... of the population.

- a) extermination;                      b) census;                      c) feeding.

10. Monks and ... were excluded from the census.

- a) Jewish rabbis;                      b) clergy;                      c) princes.

11. In 1262 the mass movement directed against the Tatar-Mongols began in the ... of Russia.

- a) north-east;                      b) south-east;                      c) north-west.

12. In November 1263 on the way back from the Horde, Alexander Nevsky fell ill and stopped in the town of ... on the Volga where he died on November 14.

- a) Yaroslavl;                      b) Gorodets;                      c) Nizhny Novgorod.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. The sons of Yaroslav – Alexander Nevsky and Andrey – after their father's death went first to the Golden Horde, and then to Mongolia where they received the patents: Alexander to reign in Vladimir, Andrey in Kiev.

2. Alexander Nevsky believed that Russia did not have enough forces to struggle for independence, therefore it would be better to retain good relations with the Horde.

3. Andrey didn't support the revolt against the Tatar-Mongols which began in Vladimir in 1252.

4. In 1252 in the northeast the Mongolian host of Tsarevitch Batu appeared.

5. The Nevruy host ruined Pereslavl and Suzdal, they did not touch other cities.

6. After Prince Andrey took shelter in Sweden the throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir passed over to Alexander Nevsky.

7. The Tatar-Mongols interfered with the internal affairs of the Russian lands.

8. Alexander Nevsky went down in history as an outstanding figure of the ancient Russia.

9. In the capital city of Vladimir and in Pereslavl there were prince's palaces, courts, houses of boyars.

10. The main direct tax was the tribute paid by each country district, small and large villages and towns.

11. In the peace time the relations with the Horde were limited to the payment of the tribute and getting patents to reign.

12. In Rostov, Murom, Ryazan the inhabitants refused to take part in the census.

13. In 1272 mass movement directed against the Tatar-Mongols began in the north-east of Russia.

14. In 1262 Alexander Yaroslavich went to the Horde for the fourth time.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Why was Alexander Nevsky dissatisfied when he received the patent to reign in Kiev?

2. Why did Alexander Nevsky think that it would be better to retain good relations with the Horde?

3. What was the Mongolian host of Tsarevitch Nevruy aimed at?

4. Why did the throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir pass over to Alexander Nevsky?

5. When and where was Alexander Nevsky born?

6. What clerks governed prince's lands, estates and affairs?

7. What was the main direct tax?

8. What was the chief duty of "baskaks"?

9. When did the first census of the population begin in the Vladimir Russia?

10. What was the aim of the census?

11. Why did Alexander Nevsky come to Novgorod in 1259 with the Suzdal regiments?

12. What caused mass movement directed against the Tatar-Mongols in the north-east of Russia in 1262?

13. Why did Alexander Yaroslavovich go to the Horde for the fourth time?

14. When did he die?

15. Did the orthodox church canonize Alexander Nevsky?

***Task 7. Be ready to describe the Vladimir-Suzdal land in the period of the Tatar-Mongol yoke.***

UNIT 6  
**THE VLADIMIR LAND WITHIN THE MOSCOW STATE**  
**(THE 14<sup>TH</sup> – 15<sup>TH</sup> CENTURIES)**

***Lesson 1. The Rise of Moscow and the Struggle of Moscow Princes  
against Tver for the Vladimir Throne. Ivan Kalita***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) to wage	❖ осуществлять, проводить
2) ambassador	❖ посол
3) negotiations	❖ переговоры
4) strife	❖ борьба
5) springboard	❖ трамплин
6) dowry	❖ приданое
7) hostilely	❖ враждебно
8) simultaneously	❖ одновременно
9) precaution	❖ предосторожность
10) patrimonial	❖ родовой
11) to resort to	❖ прибегнуть к
12) to seal	❖ скреплять

After the death of Alexander Nevsky his brother Andrey Yaroslavovich tried to take the Vladimir throne, but his younger brother Yaroslav Yaroslavovich from Tver got the yarlyk (license) to be the Great Prince of Vladimir. In 1272 the Vladimir throne passed to Vasily Yaroslavovich of Kostroma. At that time the children of Alexander Nevsky were still small and could not participate in the internecine struggle. Only in 1276 after the death of Vasily Yaroslavovich the senior son of Alexander Nevsky Dmitry Alexandrovich who had then been the prince of Pereslavl became the Great Prince of Vladimir. According to the tradition the Great Prince of Vladimir sent deputies to Novgorod, but he could not interfere into the affairs of other principalities any more. Connections with the South-west Russia were practically interrupted.



At the end of the 13<sup>th</sup> century there was the internecine struggle which was **waged** by the successors of Alexander Nevsky. The khans of the Golden Horde interfered into this struggle, sending punitive expeditions to the Russian cities from time to time. The campaign of 1293 led by Khan Dyuden was especially ruinous (“the Dyuden host”). With the help of Khan Dyuden Andrey Alexandrovich managed to get the yarlyk (license) to be the Great Prince of Vladimir, but as a result of this campaign, in addition to Vladimir 14 more cities were ruined and a lot of townspeople taken captive. All in all, in the last quarter of the 13<sup>th</sup> century the troops of the Golden Horde intruded the Northeast Russia more than 15 times.

In 1294 Dmitry Alexandrovich died and was buried in Pereslavl. His principality was inherited by his son Ivan Dmitrievich, and the second son of Alexander Nevsky Andrey Alexandrovich got the title of the Great Prince of Vladimir. To stop continuous disputes about the throne of the Great Prince, in 1296 princes gathered in Vladimir and in the presence of the khan’s **ambassador** started **negotiations**, but these negotiations hardly ended in the armed confrontation. Metropolitan Simeon prevented the conflict.

The Tatar-Mongol yoke and internal **strife** between the princes exhausted Vladimir-Suzdal Russia. Its main repeatedly ruined cities lost economic and political importance. The role of the reunification center of the Russian lands passed over to Moscow which suffered less from the princes’ conflicts and the Tatar attacks.

In the beginning of the 14<sup>th</sup> century among the cities of the Great Principality of Vladimir Tver and Moscow began to play the leading part.

The Tver principedom appeared in the 13<sup>th</sup> century, and there the descendants of Alexander Nevsky’s brother Yaroslav Yaroslavovich reigned. The youngest son of Alexander Nevsky Daniel received Moscow as his appanage. Under his rule the territory of the Moscow principality grew a great deal. He won Kolomna from the Ryazan principality, and in 1302 got the possessions of the prince of Pereslavl Ivan Dmitrievich who had no children under his will. The acquisition of Pereslavl-Zalessky raised the authority of Moscow because Pereslavl was senior than Moscow and was considered to be something like a **springboard** for the ascending the throne

of the Great Prince of Vladimir. After the death of the Great Prince Andrey Alexandrovich in 1304 there was rivalry between Moscow and Tver in the struggle for the yarlyk (license) to be the Great Prince of Vladimir. First Michael Yaroslavovich of Tver achieved success. However, then the Moscow prince Yuri Danilovich managed to win Khan Uzbek's favour and even married his sister Konchaka (Agathia after baptizing). The license to be the Great Prince of Vladimir became Konchaka's **dowry**. The Moscow prince received the right to the throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir. A considerable role in the rivalry of Moscow and Tver belonged to metropolitan Peter.

Peter was sent to Russia by Constantinople Patriarch contrary to the will of the Tver prince who was the Great Prince of Vladimir at that time. When in 1308 Peter arrived in Vladimir, the church capital of Russia, prince Michael Yaroslavovich met him **hostilely**. Then Yuri Danilovich invited the metropolitan to Moscow. In 1326 the metropolitan cathedra was transferred from Vladimir to Moscow which facilitated the rise of Moscow and **simultaneously** the fall of the role of Vladimir in political affairs, though the title of the Great Prince of Vladimir still meant the seniority among other Russian princes.

Constant internecine wars of the princes resulted in the devastation of the Russian lands. It was still worse due to the domination of the Golden Horde and constant payment of the tribute and gifts. The Tatar-Mongols' participation in the internecine struggle, their policy to support "weak" princes against "strong" ones complicated the consolidation of the Russian lands under the power of one prince. For the period of fifty years from 1238 to 1288 not a single city was constructed in the Vladimir land. In the 15<sup>th</sup> century the Great Principality of Vladimir remained in hands of the Moscow princes more and more often. In 1328, after the suppression of the revolt in Tver, Ivan Danilovich Kalita (the Moneybag), the grandson of Alexander Nevsky, occupied the throne of the Grand Prince of Vladimir. As in 1299 Metropolitan Maxim, the head of the Russian Orthodox Church, moved to Vladimir from Kiev. Vladimir became not only political, but also the religious center of Russia.

But Kalita did not go to live in Vladimir, and remained in Moscow. And from that time on, though Vladimir was considered to be the capital down to the middle of the 15<sup>th</sup> century, Great Princes only got crowned in the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir, but lived in Moscow, and Moscow actually became the center of Russia.

Khan Uzbek gave the yarlyk (license) to reign in the Great Principality of Vladimir to Ivan Kalita but as a **precaution** he divided the Vladimir principality: he gave Kostroma to Ivan Kalita, while Vladimir and a number of other cities were given to prince Alexander Vasilyevich of Suzdal. This division, however, was short: in 1332, after Alexander's death, the principality was united again. But still and later on the Golden Horde encouraged the appearance of new small principalities in every possible way, thus trying to slow down the consolidation of the Russian lands.

After the death of Ivan Kalita in 1340 his son Semyon Ivanovich (the Proud) received the license to reign in the Great Principality of Vladimir. In 1341 Khan Uzbek being concerned about the strengthening of the Moscow prince withdrew the cities of Nizhny Novgorod, Gorodets on the Volga and Unzha from his authority and gave them to the Suzdal prince Constantine Vasilyevich. Then Yuriev-Polsky was joined to the Great Principality of Vladimir. In 1342 Prince Constantine transferred the capital from Suzdal to Nizhny Novgorod. He managed to expand the territory of the principality considerably by subordination of the Mordovian lands. In the 50s of the 14<sup>th</sup> century the territory of the principality except Suzdal and Nizhny Novgorod included Yurievets, Shuya, Gorodets on the Volga. In the suburbs of Suzdal the princes of Suzdal – Nizhny Novgorod principality founded the Savior Monastery of St. Euthymius and the Intersession nunnery; both were fortresses serving the city defense. Semyon the Proud, as well as Ivan Kalita, expanded the possession by means of the land purchasing. In his will in 1353 he mentioned the purchased villages of Samarovskoye and Romanovskoye in Pereslavl, the village of Ortakovskoye in Kirzhach (the Yuriev district), the village of Semyonovskoye in the Vladimir district that had been bought from Ivan Ovtza (the Sheep).

After the death of Semyon the Proud his brother Ivan Ivanovich Krasny (the Handsome) and the prince of Suzdal – Nizhny Novgorod

Constantine Vasilyevich who was supported by Novgorodians applied for the license to reign in the Great Principality of Vladimir. The license, however, was given to Ivan Krasny. By the time of Ivan Krasny's death in 1359 his successors, Dmitry Ivanovich and Ivan Ivanovich, were still very small; that's why Dmitry Constantinovich, the prince of Suzdal – Nizhny Novgorod, managed to take the throne of the Great Prince in Vladimir in violation of the **patrimonial** rights. Dmitry Constantinovich moved to Vladimir, wishing to return it the role of the capital of the Great Principality. But his reign was short.

In 1362 the dispute of the Great Prince throne in Vladimir was considered in the Golden Horde, and Khan Amurat gave the Great Principality of Vladimir to Prince Dmitry Ivanovich of Moscow according to the patrimonial rights. In order to maintain the Great Prince throne Dmitry Ivanovich had **to resort to** force. Very soon in 1364 the whole Vladimir principality went to Moscow and the peace with the Suzdal prince was **sealed** in 1367 by the marriage of Dmitry Ivanovich of Moscow and Eudoxia, the daughter of Dmitry Constantinovich. Since that time the principality of Vladimir ceased to exist as an independent political unit.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1) patrimonial rights;                   | a) наследник;           |
| 2) internecine struggle;                 | b) получить в удел;     |
| 3) wage struggle;                        | c) бесконечный спор;    |
| 4) successor;                            | d) скрепить мир;        |
| 5) continuous dispute;                   | e) прибегнуть к силе;   |
| 6) internal strife;                      | f) вести борьбу;        |
| 7) receive as an appanage;               | g) приданое;            |
| 8) springboard for ascending the throne; | h) одновременно;        |
| 9) rivalry;                              | i) междоусобная борьба; |
| 10) dowry;                               | j) разорение;           |

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 11) simultaneously;  | k) трамплин для восхождения на престол; |
| 12) facilitate;      | l) внутренняя борьба;                   |
| 13) devastation;     | m) из предосторожности;                 |
| 14) resort to force; | n) соперничество;                       |
| 15) seal the peace;  | o) родовые права;                       |
| 16) as a precaution. | p) способствовать.                      |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. По традиции великий князь Владимирский отправлял наместников в Новгород, но вмешиваться в дела других княжеств уже не мог.

2. В конце XIII века развернулась междоусобная борьба, которую вели наследники Александра Невского.

3. Особенно разорительным был поход 1293 года во главе с Дюденем («Дюденева рать»).

4. Монголо-татарское иго и княжеские междоусобицы обескровили Владимиро-Суздальскую Русь.

5. Роль объединяющего центра русских земель перешла к Москве, менее пострадавшей от княжеских распрей и татарских набегов.

6. В 1326 году митрополичья кафедра была перенесена из Владимира в Москву, что способствовало возвышению Москвы и одновременно падению роли Владимира в политических делах, хотя титул великого князя Владимирского по-прежнему давал право на «старшинство» среди остальных русских князей.

7. Участие монголо-татар в междоусобной борьбе, стремление поддержать «слабых» князей против «сильных» осложняли объединение русских земель под властью одного князя.

8. И с этого времени, хоть Владимир и считался вплоть до середины XV века столицей, князья лишь венчались в его Успенском соборе на великое княжение, а жили в Москве, и Москва фактически стала центром Руси.

9. На окраине Суздаля суздальско-нижегородские князья поставили монастыри-крепости: Спасо-Евфимиев и Покровский.

10. Вскоре, в 1364 году, все Владимирское княжество отошло к Москве, а мир с суздальским князем был скреплен в 1367 году браком Дмитрия Ивановича (Московского князя) с Евдокией, дочерью Дмитрия Константиновича.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. According to the tradition the Great Prince of Vladimir sent ... to Novgorod.

a) clergy;                      b) tribute collectors;      c) deputies.

2. At the end of the 13<sup>th</sup> century there was the internecine struggle which was waged by the ... of Alexander Nevsky.

a) predecessors;              b) successors;              c) ancestors.

3. In the last quarter of the 13<sup>th</sup> century, the troops of the Golden Horde intruded the North-East Russia more than ... times.

a) 10;                              b) 15;                              c) 20.

4. The role of the reunification center of the Russian lands passed over to Moscow which suffered ... from the princes' conflicts and the Tatar attacks.

a) less;                              b) more;                              c) in the same way.

5. The ... son of Alexander Nevsky Daniel received Moscow as his appanage.

a) eldest;                              b) youngest;                              c) second.

6. The acquisition of Pereslavl-Zalessky ... the authority of Moscow.

a) raised;                              b) lowered;                              c) diminished.

7. After the death of the Great Prince Andrey Alexandrovich in 1304 there was the rivalry between Moscow and ... in the struggle for the yarlyk (license) to be the Great Prince of Vladimir.

a) Tver;                              b) Rostov;                              c) Nizhny Novgorod.

8. In ... the metropolitan cathedra was transferred from Vladimir to Moscow.

a) 1324;                              b) 1326;                              c) 1328.

9. For the period of fifty years from 1238 to 1288 ... city was constructed in the Vladimir land.

- a) not a single;                      b) only one;                      c) a prosperous.

10. In 1328 Ivan Danilovich Kalita (the Moneybag), the ... of Alexander Nevsky, occupied the throne of the Grand Prince of Vladimir.

- a) son;                                      b) nephew;                                      c) grandson.

11. Vladimir was considered to be the capital down to the middle of the ... century.

- a) 13<sup>th</sup>;                                      b) 14<sup>th</sup>;                                      c) 15<sup>th</sup>.

12. In ... Prince Constantine transferred the capital from Suzdal to Nizhny Novgorod.

- a) 1332;                                      b) 1342;                                      c) 1352.

13. In the suburbs of ... the princes of Suzdal – Nizhny Novgorod principality founded the Savior Monastery of St. Euthymius and the Intersession nunnery.

- a) Suzdal;                                      b) Vladimir;                                      c) Nizhny Novgorod.

14. In 1364 the ... Vladimir principality went to Moscow.

- a) half of;                                      b) two thirds;                                      c) whole.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. In 1272 the children of Alexander Nevsky participated in the internecine struggle.

2. According to the tradition the Great Prince of Vladimir sent deputies to Novgorod and interfered into the affairs of other principalities.

3. At the end of the 13<sup>th</sup> century there was the internecine struggle which was waged by the successors of Alexander Nevsky.

4. The campaign of 1293 led by Khan Dyuden was especially ruinous.

5. The Tatar-Mongol yoke and internal strife between the princes exhausted the Vladimir-Suzdal Russia.

6. In the beginning of the 14<sup>th</sup> century among the cities of the Great Principality of Vladimir Tver began to play the leading part.

7. Moscow was senior than Pereslavl and was considered to be something like a springboard for the ascending the throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir.

8. In 1326 the metropolitan cathedra was transferred from Moscow to Vladimir which complicated the rise of Moscow.

9. The Tatar-Mongols' participation in the internecine struggle, their policy to support "weak" princes against "strong" ones complicated the consolidation of the Russian lands under the power of one prince.

10. The Golden Horde encouraged the appearance of new small principalities in every possible way, thus trying to slow down the consolidation of the Russian lands.

11. In the 50s of the 14<sup>th</sup> century the territory of the Great Principality of Vladimir included Suzdal, Nizhny Novgorod, Yurievets, Shuya, Gorodets-on-the Volga.

12. In 1366 the whole Vladimir principality went to Moscow and the peace with the Suzdal prince was sealed in 1367 by the marriage of Dmitry Ivanovich of Moscow and Eudoxia, the daughter of Dmitry Constantinovich.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Who became the Great Prince of Vladimir after the death of Alexander Nevsky?

2. When did the senior son of Alexander Nevsky Dmitry Alexandrovich become the Great Prince of Vladimir?

3. How did the khans of the Golden Horde interfere into the internecine struggle of the successors of Alexander Nevsky?

4. How many times did the troops of the Golden Horde intrude the Northeast Russia in the last quarter of the 13<sup>th</sup> century?

5. What exhausted Vladimir-Suzdal Rus'?

6. What cities began to play the leading part in the Great Principality of Vladimir in the beginning of the 14<sup>th</sup> century?

7. Why did the territory of the Moscow principality grow a great deal under the rule of the youngest son of Alexander Nevsky Daniel?



8. Did Moscow or Tver prince succeed in the rivalry for the yarlyk (license) to be the Great Prince of Vladimir?

9. What facilitated the rise of Moscow and simultaneously fall of the role of Vladimir in political affairs?

10. Did Kalita live in Vladimir?

11. Where did Great Princes get crowned?

12. How did the Golden Horde slow down the consolidation of the Russian lands?

13. When did Prince Constantine transfer the capital from Suzdal to Nizhny Novgorod?

14. Since what time did the principality of Vladimir cease to exist as an independent political unit?

## ***Lesson 2. Vasily's I Reign. The Internecine Struggle of the Second Quarter of the 15<sup>th</sup> Century. Formation and Growth of Feudal Land Tenure***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) to plunder	❖ грабить
2) devastation	❖ опустошение
3) to capture	❖ брать в плен
4) manor	❖ имение
5) ransom	❖ выкуп
6) as a substitute	❖ в противовес
7) land tenure	❖ землевладение
8) commune	❖ община
9) trial	❖ суд
10) secular	❖ светский
11) inventory	❖ опись, описание
12) endow	❖ наделять
13) ancestral lands	❖ вотчина
14) district	❖ уезд
15) nunnery	❖ женский монастырь
16) hermitage	❖ пустынь

Since the second half of the 14<sup>th</sup> century the history of the Vladimir land was closely connected with the history of Moscow. Moscow became the successor of political and cultural traditions of Vladimir which was reflected both in architecture and in literature. The history of the Vladimir land at that period is very poor in historical events. It is known, that in 1371 when in the Golden Horde the prince of Tver Michael Alexandrovich received a license to reign in the Great Principality of Vladimir, the townspeople of Vladimir and Pereslavl-Zalessky did not let him go into these cities. But next year Pereslavl-Zalessky was seized and **plundered** by Michael with the help of the Lithuanian army under the leadership of Keistutus. In 1377 the regiments from Vladimir, Pereslavl, Murom, Yuriev, and Nizhny Novgorod took part in the battle with the Mongols on the river Pyana where the Russian troops suffered defeat; Suzdal was burnt.

In 1380 the detachments from Suzdal, Murom, Pereslavl fought in the battle on Kulikovo field. The Vladimir regiments were under the command of voivode Timofei Vasilyevich Velyaminov; Pereslavl regiments were led by Andrey Serkizovich. That battle on the bank of the Don ended with the historic victory of Russian warriors under command of the Great Moscow Prince Dmitry Ivanovich named Dmitry Donskoi (of the Don) after that.

In 1383 after the death of Dmitry Constantinovich of Nizhny Novgorod the struggle for the Suzdal – Nizhny Novgorod principality became more intense. Suzdal went to Boris, a brother of Dmitry Constantinovich. In 1389 Vasily I Dmitrievich, the son of Dmitry Donskoy and Edoxia Dmitrievna, the daughter of Dmitry Constantinovich, the prince of Suzdal – Nizhny Novgorod, ascended the throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir. Vasily I continued the policy of “gathering” Russian lands, and that’s why it was very important for this process to join Suzdal, Nizhny Novgorod and Murom with Moscow.

In 1392 – 1393 Vasily I simultaneously received licenses to reign in Murom, Nizhny Novgorod, Tarusa, Gorodets and Meshchora.

At the end of the 14<sup>th</sup> – the beginning of the 15<sup>th</sup> centuries the Russo-Lithuanian principality claimed the role of the gatherer of the Russian lands. The conditions became complicated due to the interference of Poland and the Livonian Order into the affairs of the Eastern Europe. Moscow princes

willingly accepted the nobility coming to their service from Lithuania. In 1406 Alexander Ivanovich Nelyub came to the service of the Great Prince of Moscow, he became the governor of Pereslavl. Two years later, in July 1408 Vasily I met the brother of the Polish king Svidrigailo “with great honours” and gave him Vladimir with all the districts with small and large villages and tributes as well as Pereslavl and Yuriev-Polsky.

In October – December 1408 Murza Edigey made the raid on the North-East of Russia. Edigey’s campaign pursued the purpose of weakening the Moscow state, and it was achieved; but the main purpose was not only robberies and **devastation** of the Russian lands but there were also the political demands. One of the peace treaty conditions in 1409 was the liquidation of the union of Vasily I with Svidrigailo, which meant strengthening of Moscow. It is not by chance that the main attack of the Tatar-Mongols was directed against the cities and lands, given to Svidrigailo including Pereslavl, Yuriev-Polsky. Svidrigailo was forced to go back to Lithuania.

Two years later the lands of the north-east were again ruined. This time the reason for the attack was metropolitan Photius’ stay in Vladimir. Appointed the metropolitan of all Russia by the Constantinople patriarch Photius (Greek by origin) supported the Great Prince of Moscow in his policy of collecting Russian lands. The first step of the metropolitan was visiting Vladimir, the church capital of Russia, from which Photius intended to govern all Russian Orthodox Church. The activities of Photius directed to the further rise of Moscow and strengthening consolidation of the Great Principality of Vladimir caused the Golden Horde ruler Edigey to organize a campaign against Russia with the purpose **to capture** the metropolitan.

In 1410 Daniel Borisovich, the son of former Suzdal prince Boris Constantinovich, secretly invited tsarevich Talych from the Golden Horde. Against Vladimir he sent his boyar Semyon Karamyshev together with Talych at the head of the detachment consisting of the Russians and the Tatars.

This attack was obviously coordinated with Edigey. However, Photius left Vladimir in time and hid in one of his **manors**, surrounded with almost impassable bogs. Vladimir and some other cities were ruined.

The next stage of internecine struggle began in the second quarter of the 15<sup>th</sup> century when the war between Vasily II (the Dark), the son of Vasily I, and his uncle Yuri Dmitrievich, the prince of Galich, began which is known as the feudal war in Russia.

The most tragic events occurred in the middle of the 15<sup>th</sup> century. In the winter of 1444 Khan Ulu-Mohammed came with his host to Murom. Against him came the coalition of Russian princes: Vasily II, Dmitry Shemyaka, Ivan Andreevich of Mozhaisk, Michael Andreevich of Vereya. Having met with the opposition the khan retreated to Nizhny Novgorod quickly. After the victory Vasily II returned to Moscow via Suzdal and Vladimir.

In the spring of 1445, the news about the coming Tatar raid into Russia spread in Moscow. On July 7, 1445 Russian armies were defeated. Vasily II was taken prisoner. Pursuing retreating troops, the Tatars burnt out some villages and took many prisoners. In three days, the Tatar tsareviches crossed Klyazma and stopped opposite Vladimir, but did not dare to storm it. They went to Nizhny Novgorod via Murom having taken Vasily II with them. Soon the noble prisoner was freed under the condition of the big **ransom** and arrived in Moscow with the big Tatar detachment. Dmitry Shemyaka, Vasily's II cousin, took the advantage of public opinion, captured the Great Prince and blinded him. Then (1446) Vasily II got the nickname "the Dark" (that is blind). Struggle for the throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir and Moscow went on for a long time and finished with the full victory of Vasily Tyomny (the Dark) over Dmitry Shemyaka and other princes supporting him.

Vasily II reigned till 1462. Under his rule custom of the throne inheritance from the father to the son was finally established **as a substitute** of the old principle of a patrimonial heritage by the right of seniority of the uncle before nephews.

The 13<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries were the period of formation and growth of feudal **land tenure** in Russia. The earlier free peasant community was almost completely subordinated to the feudal state and separate land owners. Actually, during this period feudal lords started to claim a monopoly right

to possess land which gave them economic and political power over peasants.

By the middle of the 14<sup>th</sup> century in Russia restoration of the economy destroyed by the Mongol invasion had basically been completed. The basis of the economy was agriculture as it had been before.

Most lands on the territory of the Vladimir region belonged to the Great Prince. The development of new lands was realized by means of free settlements foundation when the prince gave people from other principalities an opportunity to settle on his lands on favorable terms.

Andrey Kobyla, one of Ivan Kalita's boyars, played an active role in settling Zalesie lands, his son Fyodor Koshka became the forefather of the Romanov imperial house.

The Tutolmin princes less known than the Kobylins also founded free settlements. Their lands were on the banks of the Bolshoi Kirzhach (village Shimonovo and others). In Ivan Kalita's will there was mentioned the village of Pavlovskoie bought by his grandmother at the end of the 13<sup>th</sup> century – one of the most ancient villages belonging to the Great Princes in Pereslavl-Zalessky lands (later on this village was given to St. Alexander monastery in Pereslavl-Zalessky).

On the black (the state) Great Prince owned lands peasants lived and worked in **communes**. In the 15<sup>th</sup> century these lands had already been administratively organized, there were black volosts (country districts) and stans consisting of some volosts. In the central settlement of such administrative unit there was a communal self-government, the **trials** were conducted, the tribute was collected. By the beginning of the 15<sup>th</sup> century the significant part of the black or belonging to the Great Prince lands had already passed to **secular** and church feudal lords.

In the Vladimir region there were also lands belonging to the ancient appanage princes' clans such as princes Starodubskies-Pozharskies, Romodanovskies, Ryapolovskies, and Gagarins.

Right at the end of the 15<sup>th</sup> century the general **inventory** of all the lands was made and there was an attempt to introduce a uniform unit of taxation.

In the middle of the 14<sup>th</sup> century one of the largest monasteries in the Vladimir region – the Savior Monastery of St. Euthymius was founded

which the descendants of the Suzdal princes generously **endowed** with their **ancestral lands** near Suzdal, Gorokhovets and in Nizhny Novgorod lands.

Close to the Savior St. Euthymius monastery on the opposite bank of the Kamenka River the nunnery of the Intercession was founded which also received generous gifts. The volost of Dubrova in the Vladimir **district** and the village of Seminskoie (Semghinskoie) in the Yuriev-Polsky district belonged to the Princess Assumption **Nunnery**.

In the middle of the 14<sup>th</sup> century at the confluence of the small rivers Mahrishcha and Moloksha a monk Stefan, a comrade of St. Sergius of Radonezh, founded St. Stefan of Mahrishcha **hermitage**.

Monasteries were the largest land owners. Besides the monastery land tenures on the territory of the Vladimir region there were also the metropolitan's lands.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1) license to reign;                      | a) разграбить;                         |
| 2) successor;                             | b) непроходимые болота;                |
| 3) to plunder;                            | c) воспользоваться настроением народа; |
| 4) robberies and devastation;             | d) очередной поход;                    |
| 5) impassable bogs;                       | e) выкуп;                              |
| 6) manor;                                 | f) преемник;                           |
| 7) coming raid;                           | g) удельный князь;                     |
| 8) pursue retreating troops;              | h) ограбления и разорение;             |
| 9) ransom;                                | i) имение;                             |
| 10) take the advantage of public opinion; | j) ярлык на княжение;                  |
| 11) as a substitute;                      | k) община;                             |
| 12) patrimonial heritage;                 | l) преследовать отступавших;           |
| 13) land tenure;                          | m) родовое наследование;               |
| 14) commune;                              | n) в противовес;                       |
| 15) conduct trial;                        | o) вотчина;                            |

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 16) appanage prince;          | p) землевладение;            |
| 17) uniform unit of taxation; | q) вершить суд;              |
| 18) ancestral lands;          | r) женский монастырь;        |
| 19) nunnery.                  | s) единая единица обложения. |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. Со второй половины XIV века история Владимирской земли тесно связана с историей Москвы.

2. В 1380 году отряды из Суздаля, Мурома, Переславля сражались на Куликовом поле.

3. Василий I продолжил политику «собирания» русских земель, и большую роль в этом процессе сыграла борьба за присоединение к Москве Суздаля, Нижнего Новгорода, Мурома.

4. Поставленный в митрополиты константинопольским патриархом Фотий (грек по происхождению) встал на путь сотрудничества с великим князем Московским в деле собирания русских земель.

5. Деятельность Фотия, направленная на дальнейшее возвышение Москвы и укрепление единства великого княжества Владимирского, подтолкнула ордынского правителя Едигея к организации похода на Русь с целью пленения митрополита.

6. Однако Фотий вовремя покинул Владимир и скрылся в одном из митрополичьих имений, окруженном труднопроходимыми болотами.

7. Весной 1445 года в Москве было получено известие об очередном походе татар на Русь.

8. Преследуя отступавших, татары сожгли несколько сел, взяли большой «полон».

9. Шемяка, воспользовавшись настроением народа, захватил великого князя и ослепил его.

10. При Василии II окончательно утвердился обычай наследования престола от отца к сыну в противовес старому принципу родового наследия и старшинства дядей над племянниками.

11. Освоение пустых земель шло путем основания слобод, когда князь предоставлял возможность на льготных условиях селиться людям «из иных княжений» на своих землях.

12. На великокняжеских черных землях крестьяне вели общинный образ жизни и хозяйства.

13. В самом конце XV века было проведено всеобщее описание земель и сделана попытка ввести единую единицу обложения.

14. Княгинину Успенскому монастырю принадлежали волость Дуброва во Владимирском уезде и селе Семьинское (Семгинское) в Юрьевском уезде.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Since the second half of the ... century the history of the Vladimir land was closely connected with the history of Moscow.

- a) 13<sup>th</sup>;                      b) 14<sup>th</sup>;                      c) 15<sup>th</sup>.

2. In 1380 the detachments from Suzdal, Murom, Pereslavl fought in the battle on the ... .

- a) Don;                      b) Pyana;                      c) Klyazma.

3. In 1389 Vasily I Dmitrievich, the son of Dmitry Donskoy and Edoxia Dmitrievna, ascended the throne of the Great Prince of ... .

- a) Moscow;                      b) Kiev;                      c) Vladimir.

4. Moscow princes ... accepted the nobility coming to their service from Lithuania.

- a) willingly;                      b) reluctantly;                      c) seldom.

5. Edigey's campaign pursued the purpose of ... the Moscow state.

- a) strengthening;                      b) establishing contacts with;                      c) weakening.

6. The first step of the metropolitan was visiting Vladimir, the ... capital of Russia, from which Photius intended to govern all Russian Orthodox Church.

- a) political;                      b) economic;                      c) church.

7. The ... war in Russia began in the second quarter of the 15<sup>th</sup> century.

- a) patriotic;                      b) feudal;                      c) civil.



8. After Shemyaka captured the Great Prince and blinded him, Vasily II got the nickname ... .

- a) “the Great”;            b) “the Terrible”;            c) “the Dark”.

9. Under ... rule the custom of the throne inheritance from the father to the son was finally established.

- a) Ivan’s III;            b) Vasily’s II;            c) Michael’s I.

10. By the middle of the 14<sup>th</sup> century in Russia restoration of the economy destroyed by the Mongol invasion had basically ... .

- a) begun;            b) been completed;            c) continued.

11. In the middle of the 14<sup>th</sup> century most lands on the territory of the Vladimir region belonged to ... .

- a) the Great Prince;    b) metropolitan;            c) nobility.

12. On the ... (the state) Great Prince owned lands peasants lived and worked in communes.

- a) white;            b) black;            c) red.

13. Right at the end of the 15<sup>th</sup> century the general inventory of all the lands was made and there was an attempt to introduce a ... unit of taxation.

- a) separate;            b) different;            c) uniform.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. Vladimir became the successor of political and cultural traditions of Moscow which was reflected both in architecture and in literature.

2. In 1371 when in the Golden Horde the prince of Tver Michael Alexandrovich received a license to reign in the Great Principality of Vladimir, the townspeople of Vladimir and Pereslavl-Zalessky let him go into these cities.

3. In 1380 the detachments from Suzdal, Murom, Pereslavl fought in the battle on Kulikovo field.

4. Vasily I continued the policy of “gathering” Russian lands.

5. At the end of the 14<sup>th</sup> – the beginning of the 15<sup>th</sup> centuries the Tver principality claimed the role of the gatherer of the Russian lands.

6. Edigey's campaign of 1408 pursued the purpose of weakening the Moscow state, but it wasn't achieved.

7. The war between Vasily II (the Dark), the son of Vasily I, and his uncle Yuri Dmitrievich, the prince of Galich, is known as the feudal war in Russia.

8. On July 7, 1454 Vasily II was taken prisoner by the Tatars.

9. Fyodor Koshka captured Vasily II and blinded him.

10. The 13<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries were the period of formation and growth of feudal land tenure in Russia.

11. By the beginning of the 15<sup>th</sup> century the significant part of the black or belonging to the Great Prince lands had already passed to secular and church feudal lords.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Since what time was the history of the Vladimir land closely connected with the history of Moscow?

2. Who won the battle on the river Pyana in 1377?

3. Who commanded the Vladimir regiments in the battle on Kulikovo field in 1380?

4. When did Vasily I ascend the throne of the Great Prince of Vladimir?

5. Why was it very important for Vasily I to join Suzdal, Nizhny Novgorod and Murom with Moscow?

6. What was the main purpose of Murza Edigey when he made the raid on the Northeast Russia in 1408?

7. Why were the lands of the north-east ruined again by the Mongols in 1410?

8. Where did Photius intend to govern all Russian Orthodox Church from?

9. Why did Shemyaka blind the Great Prince Vasily II?

10. What custom of the throne inheritance was finally established under the rule of Vasily II?

11. What kind of land tenure grew in Russia in the 13<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries?
12. How did new lands develop?
13. What ancient appanage princes' clans did lands belong to in the Vladimir region in the 15<sup>th</sup> century?
14. What monasteries were founded in the middle of the 14<sup>th</sup> century in the Vladimir region?

### ***Lesson 3. Culture of the 14<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> Centuries***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) to decline           | ❖ уменьшиться             |
| 2) submission           | ❖ покорность, подчинение  |
| 3) debauch              | ❖ дебош, разврат          |
| 4) usury                | ❖ ростовщичество          |
| 5) fornication          | ❖ блуд                    |
| 6) bishopric            | ❖ епископия               |
| 7) sermon               | ❖ поучение, проповедь     |
| 8) to revere            | ❖ чтить, почитать         |
| 9) copy                 | ❖ список (летописи)       |
| 10) scribe              | ❖ писец                   |
| 11) codex (pl. codices) | ❖ свод (летописный)       |
| 12) auspice             | ❖ покровительство         |
| 13) authorized          | ❖ доверенный, официальный |
| 14) dungeon             | ❖ темница                 |
| 15) book-depository     | ❖ книгохранилище          |
| 16) fulling             | ❖ сукновальня             |
| 17) righteous person    | ❖ праведник               |
| 18) to summon           | ❖ созывать                |
| 19) to plead            | ❖ просить, молить         |

Russian culture of the second half of the 13<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries developed under extremely complex conditions. It was influenced by three factors: the Tatar-Mongol invasion and the establishment of the yoke, the process of consolidation of the Russian lands into the single state, the formation of the Great Russian nationality.

The events of 1237 – 1240 were the most tragical in the centuries-old history of the Russian people. As a result of extermination and captivity of numerous craftsmen the craft, an important branch of material culture, was undermined. Many secrets of crafts given from the father to the son were lost.

As a result of the devastation caused by the Tatar-Mongols and fires a great number of books perished. Painting, applied arts and other fields of culture fell into decay. However, in spite of the heavy damage caused to the Russian culture the Tatar-Mongols could not completely destroy it.

At that time difficult for the country the church was a keeper of national culture. At the court of the metropolitan, and, probably, at the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir the compilation of chronicles did not stop.

At the same time the church authority had considerably **declined** as a result its persistent appeal to the people for patience and **submission** to the Golden Horde. The authority decline was also caused by undue behaviour of the clergy who even before the Tatar invasion had been notable for corruption, heavy drinking, **debauch**, practiced **usury**. The church council taking place in Vladimir in 1274 pursued the struggle against this evil and restoration of the church authority. The very fact of this council of the church hierarchs being held in Vladimir testified to its high prestige and influence on the all-Russia affairs.

At this church council it was decided to choose clerics from the worthy people, after the preliminary investigation whether they were guilty of “**fornication**, murder, usury”. Bishop Serapion stayed at the head of Vladimir **bishopric** throughout one year only (1274 – 1275). In the last years of his life Serapion wrote five **sermons** describing the disasters of the Russian land.

Since 1299 Vladimir officially became the seat of the Russian metropolitans though their title as the metropolitans of Kiev did not change. The first metropolitan buried in Vladimir was Maxim.

In the 14<sup>th</sup> century St. Sergius of Radonezh, one of the most **revered** Russian saints, twice visited the Vladimir land.

Since the 12<sup>th</sup> century in the Vladimir-Suzdal land chronicles were compiled. The Laurentian Chronicle takes a special place among them. It was named so after the **copy** compiled in 1377 by monk Laurentius. The chronicle was written by several **scribers** which is testified by different handwritings. From the record made at the end of the chronicle it follows, that the Laurentian Chronicle was compiled under the rule of Dmitry Constantinovich of Suzdal – Nizhny Novgorod principality, most probably by his order. Later one of its copies was kept in the Nativity monastery in Vladimir. The basic ideas of this **codex** are Vladimir's superiority over Rostov and transfer of the political center of Russia from Kiev to Vladimir. The codex ends in the detailed account of the internecine struggle for the Vladimir throne in 1174 – 1176.

After the Tatar-Mongol invasion in the Vladimir Nativity monastery taking the leading position among the old Russian monasteries, chronicles were compiled under the **auspice** of the Great Princes. Codices were written in the reign of Yaroslav Vsevolodovich (1239), his brother Svyatoslav (1247 – 1249), Alexander Nevsky (1252). The Vladimir chronicles, more than the chronicles of any other Russian center of this period, reflect the ideas of the all-Russian lands' unification. They were the Vladimir chronicles that formed the foundation of chronicles of the future “unifiers of the Russian lands”, the princes of Tver and Moscow. Right at the beginning of the 14<sup>th</sup> century, probably, at the court of metropolitan Peter, which was in Vladimir since 1309, on the basis of the Vladimir chronicle codices was created the so-called Vladimir Polychronus which became one of the basic sources of the Laurentian chronicle.

In the 15<sup>th</sup> century during the feudal war there was an important event for the Russian church. In 1438 – 1439 in Italy, first in Ferrara and after that in Florence, there gathered a church council on the unification of Christian

churches: Western Catholic Church and Eastern Orthodox Church. At that council Russia was represented by the metropolitan Isidor, a Greek by origin, recently appointed by Constantinople, who actively supported the union. Suzdal bishop Abraham, an **authorized** representative of Vasily II, accompanied Isidor. It is Abraham who is supposed to be the author of “The Diary of Isidor’s Travel to Western Europe”. The signature of Abraham is on the act certifying the Union: “A humble bishop Abraham signed here”. The Union put the Orthodox Church in submission to Catholic Rome.

After returning to Russia Abraham confessed that he had refused to sign the document about this Union, but Isidor had put him “in the **dungeon** and he spent there a week, so he had to sign the act by force not willingly”. Later on, Russia refused to recognize the Florence Union, and the Russian Orthodox Church became autocephalous, i. e. independent both from Rome and from Constantinople. “The Diary of Isidor’s Travel” was being written during the travel, but later on, after the returning of the embassy, it was assumed to be edited by a Suzdelian monk Simeon who treated Isidor with hostility and wrote his own story “Isidor’s Council and His Traveling”. This “Traveling” is the most ancient description of Western Europe in the Russian literature. It describes all the towns which the embassy went through, tells about the distances between them and gives the description of the sights which attracted the attention of the Russian travelers. Thus, in Luneburgh the author was interested in the fountains, in Florence he was fascinated with a hospital with a thousand of beds, and on all beds “there were nice feather mattresses and expensive blankets”, he liked the **book-depository** which had “more than a thousand of books”. There is a vivid description of a cypress whose bark resembles that of a lime tree and the foliage is similar to that of a fur tree but soft, while cones look like those of a pine. The author pays equal attention to the religious disputes and to the **fulling** and water mills. He does not estimate the Union itself, only mentions the fact of its signing.

In the second half of the 15<sup>th</sup> century there appeared such a literary genre as a story with a plot. One of the most outstanding literary works of

this genre is “The Story about Peter and Fevronia of Murom”. In the manuscript “The Story” was named “Lives”, but actually it is far from describing the life of **righteous persons**. The plot of “The Story” is based on the plots of the two Russian folk fairy tales about a flying dragon and about a wise maiden which are skillfully united into a single whole of a literary work.

The history of the Vladimir region is connected with the life and work of one of the most outstanding icon-painters of the Middle Ages Andrey Rublev. In the 15<sup>th</sup> century local schools of the Russian icon-painting in Novgorod, Moscow, Rostov, Tver, Pskov, Vologda were formed. In spite of their peculiarities, they had one common feature: a growing interest to the psychological portrayal of a man and his inner spiritual world.

In 1408 Andrey Rublev and Daniel Chyorny worked in the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir decorating its walls with fresco-painting, and soon after that he returned to Moscow. One of the best frescos by Rublev in the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir is the Righteous Procession into Paradise. Apostle Peter goes at the head of the procession with the keys to Paradise, his figure is united with the figures of the righteous people following him, which creates the impression of the spiritual unity of the crowd, though each group of the righteous people (apostles, prophets, prelates, etc.) is treated individually. In addition to the Righteous Procession into Paradise there are also the images of two trumpeting angels **summoning** the souls of the dead people to the Last Judgment, the Procession of the Righteous Wives, the images of the Christ and apostles sitting in judgment, **pleading** John the Baptist and the Holy Virgin.

Frescoes and icons by Andrey Rublev had powerful spiritual impact on his contemporaries. It was not by chance that in the 16<sup>th</sup> century the church council prescribed all the icon-painters to paint as Andrey Rublev and not to invent anything themselves and the painter himself was canonized.

**Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:**

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1) fall into decay;                     | a) епископия;                     |
| 2) compilation of chronicles;           | b) книгохранилище;                |
| 3) undue behavior;                      | c) доверенное лицо;               |
| 4) practice usury;                      | d) Богородица;                    |
| 5) bishopric;                           | e) Исидоров собор и хождение его; |
| 6) sermon;                              | f) прийти в упадок;               |
| 7) under the auspice;                   | g) посольство;                    |
| 8) authorized representative;           | h) неподобающее поведение;        |
| 9) put in submission;                   | i) созывать;                      |
| 10) embassy;                            | j) летописание;                   |
| 11) Isidor's Council and His Traveling; | k) праведник;                     |
| 12) book-depository;                    | l) сюжетная повесть;              |
| 13) story with a plot;                  | m) поучение, проповедь;           |
| 14) righteous person;                   | n) ставить в подчинение;          |
| 15) summon;                             | o) заниматься ростовщичеством;    |
| 16) John the Baptist;                   | p) под покровительством;          |
| 17) the Holy Virgin.                    | q) Иоанн Предтеча.                |

**Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.**

1. В результате истребления и пленения огромного количества ремесленников была подорвана важная отрасль материальной культуры – ремесло.

2. При митрополичьей кафедре, а возможно, и при Успенском соборе во Владимире не прекращалось летописание.

3. Падению авторитета содействовало и неподобающее поведение самих служителей церкви, которые и до татарского нашествия отличались продажностью, пьянством, развращенностью, занимались ростовщичеством.



4. С 1299 года Владимир официально становится местом пребывания русских митрополитов, хотя их титул – митрополит Киевский – оставался без изменения.

5. Летопись написана разными почерками, что свидетельствует о работе нескольких писцов.

6. После монголо-татарского завоевания при владимирском Рождественском монастыре, занимавшем ведущее положение в древнерусской монастырской иерархии, продолжалось великокняжеское летописание.

7. Именно владимирские летописные своды легли в основу летописания будущих «собирателей Руси» – тверских и московских князей.

8. Предполагается, что именно Авраам был автором «Дневника путешествия Исидора в Западную Европу».

9. В основе «Повести» лежат два сюжета из русских народных сказок: о летающем змее и о мудрой деве, которые искусно объединены в одно целое литературное произведение.

10. В Успенском соборе во Владимире находится одна из лучших фресок Рублева – «Шествие праведников в рай».

11. Не случайно в XVI веке решением Освященного собора художник был причислен к лику святых, а живописцам предписывалось «писать так, как писал Андрей Рублев, а от себя ничтоже придумывать».

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. The Russian culture of the second half of the 13<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries developed under extremely ... conditions.

- a) favourable;                      b) easy;                      c) complex.

2. As a result of extermination and ... of numerous craftsmen the craft, an important branch of material culture, was undermined.

- a) captivity;                      b) refuge;                      c) extra-work.

3. As a result of the devastation caused by the Tatar-Mongols and fires a great number of books ... .

- a) appeared;                      b) perished;                      c) were stolen.

4. The church authority considerably declined as a result of its persistent appeal to the people for patience and ... to the Golden Horde.

- a) submission;                      b) revolt;                      c) pilgrimage.

5. Since 1299 ... officially became the seat of the Russian metropolitans.

- a) Moscow;                      b) Suzdal;                      c) Vladimir.

6. Since the ... century in the Vladimir-Suzdal land the chronicles were compiled.

- a) 11<sup>th</sup>;                      b) 12<sup>th</sup>;                      c) 13<sup>th</sup>.

7. At the church council in Florence in 1438 – 1439 Russia was represented by the metropolitan Isidor, a ... by origin, recently appointed by Constantinople, who actively supported the union.

- a) Russian;                      b) Polish;                      c) Greek.

8. The Russian Orthodox Church became autocephalous, i. e. ... both from Rome and from Constantinople.

- a) dependent;                      b) independent;                      c) different.

9. “Isidor’s Council and His Traveling” is the most ancient description of ... Europe in the Russian literature.

- a) Eastern;                      b) Southern;                      c) Western.

10. “The Story about Peter and Fevronia of Murom” is based on the plots of the two Russian folk ... .

- a) fairy tales;                      b) songs;                      c) novels.

11. In 1408 Andrey Rublev and Daniel Chyorny worked in the ... Cathedral in Vladimir.

- a) St. Demetrius;                      b) Assumption;                      c) Nativity.

12. In the ... century Andrey Rublev was canonized.

- a) 15<sup>th</sup>;                      b) 16<sup>th</sup>;                      c) 17<sup>th</sup>.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. The Russian culture of the second half of the 13<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries was influenced by two factors: the establishment of the yoke and the process of consolidation of the Russian lands into the single state.

2. The Tatar-Mongols completely destroyed Russian culture.

3. The church authority decline was caused by undue behaviour of the clergy.

4. The very fact of the council of the church hierarchs being held in Vladimir in 1374 testified to its high prestige and influence on the all-Russia affairs.

5. Bishop Maxim stayed at the head of Vladimir bishopric throughout one year (1274 – 1275).

6. Since 1399 Vladimir officially became the seat of the Russian metropolitans.

7. In the 14<sup>th</sup> century St. Sergius of Radonezh, one of the most revered Russian saints, thrice visited the Vladimir land.

8. The Laurentian Chronicle was written by one scribe – monk Laurentius.

9. The basic ideas of the Laurentian Chronicle are Rostov superiority over Vladimir and transfer of the political center of Russia from Kiev to Rostov.

10. The Vladimir chronicles, more than the chronicles of any other Russian center of the middle of the 13<sup>th</sup> century, reflect the ideas of the all-Russian lands' unification.

11. In 1438 – 1439 in Italy, first in Ferrara and after that in Florence, a church council on the unification of Christian and Muslim churches gathered.

12. In the second half of the 15<sup>th</sup> century there appeared such a literary genre as a story with a plot.

13. One of the best frescos by Rublev in the Assumption Cathedral in Suzdal is the Righteous Procession into Paradise.

14. Frescoes and icons by Andrey Rublev had powerful spiritual impact on his contemporaries.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. What factors influenced the development of the Russian culture of the second half of the 13<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries?

2. What undermined craft in the 13<sup>th</sup> century?

3. Why did the church authority decline?

4. What aim did the church council taking place in Vladimir in 1274 pursue?

5. When did Vladimir officially become the seat of the Russian metropolitans?

6. Why did the Laurentian Chronicle get such a name?

7. What monastery had the leading position among the old Russian monasteries after the Tatar-Mongol invasion?

8. What chronicles formed the foundation of chronicles of the future “unifiers of the Russian lands”, the princes of Tver and Moscow?

9. What became one of the basic sources of the Laurentian chronicle?

10. Who was the author of “The Diary of Isidor’s Travel to Western Europe”?

11. Who wrote “Isidor’s Council and His Traveling”? What does this story describe?

12. What was one of the most outstanding literary works written in the genre of a story with a plot in the second half of the 15<sup>th</sup> century?

13. When did Andrey Rublev and Daniel Chyorny work in the Assumption Cathedral in Vladimir?

14. What did the church council prescribe all the icon-painters in the 16<sup>th</sup> century?

***Task 7. Be ready to speak on the development of literature and icon-painting in the Vladimir land in the 14<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> centuries.***

UNIT 7  
**THE VLADIMIR LAND IN THE 16<sup>TH</sup> – 17<sup>TH</sup> CENTURIES**

***Lesson 1. The Social and Economic Development of the Vladimir Land***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) harvest	❖ урожай
2) rye	❖ рожь
3) buckwheat	❖ гречиха
4) three-field crop rotation system with the strips of fallow lands	❖ паровая система земледелия с трехпольным севооборотом
5) harrow	❖ борона
6) scythe	❖ коса
7) rake	❖ грабли
8) spade	❖ заступ
9) crowbar	❖ лом
10) quitrent	❖ оброк
11) fodder	❖ корм для скота
12) hay	❖ сено
13) water meadow	❖ пойма
14) stable	❖ конюшня
15) bream	❖ лещ
16) chub	❖ голавль
17) burbot	❖ налим
18) perch	❖ окунь
19) ruffe	❖ ерш
20) sturgeon	❖ белуга
21) apiary	❖ пасека
22) beaver	❖ бобер
23) saltpeter	❖ селитра
24) motley	❖ пестрый
25) middleman	❖ скупщик
26) feudal land tenure	❖ система феодального землевладения

The first half of the 16<sup>th</sup> century up to 1560s was a relatively favourable period for the economic development of the country. The chronicles mention only one year, 1512, when there was no **harvest** at all in the country.

By the end of the 16<sup>th</sup> century there had been a significant growth of agricultural production, which was interrupted at the beginning of the 17<sup>th</sup> century by three years of crop failure in 1601 – 1603 and the greatest political disaster, the Time of Troubles, after which only in 1620s the new period of economic growth began.

The main branch of earth tilling was crop growing. The main crop grown everywhere was rye. Beginning from the Vladimir-Suzdal Opolye and further south **rye** dominated and occupied about 50 % of all the cultivated lands. **Buckwheat** was also widely spread.

The most widespread technical crops were flax and hemp. In the 16<sup>th</sup> – 17<sup>th</sup> centuries when the North trade route to Europe was discovered, flax and linen goods were exported from the central districts of Russia including the Vladimir land.

The main system of earth tilling was a **three-field crop rotation system with the strips of fallow lands**. The land was mainly tilled with a *sokha*, an animal drawn tool of a plough type. A plough was also used. Wooden **harrows** purchases were frequently mentioned in the documents. Other agricultural tools included **scythes**, **rakes**, shovels and **spades** (both wooden and iron), **crowbars**.

In the 16<sup>th</sup> century mills were widely spread (in the 13<sup>th</sup> – 14<sup>th</sup> centuries miller's craft only began to appear). It is known that there were watermills on the rivers Klyazma and Nerl. On the Rpen River there was a watermill donated by Ivan the Terrible in 1556 to the Vladimir Assumption and Princess Nunnery. The Nunnery let it out to peasants from neighbouring villages for an annual **quitrent** of 9 – 13 rubles.

Cattle breeding was the necessary addition to the earth tilling. Usually a peasant household had one or two horses, two or three cows, two or three heads of big horn cattle and three heads of small horn cattle.

The main cattle **fodder** was **hay**, which was cut on the **water meadows** near the rivers and lakes. Hay supply to the feudal **stables** was one of the peasant duties.

Different occupations played an important role in peasant life; fishing was the leading one among them. Even small rivers and lakes were considered good possessions. Fish was caught in small and big rivers. In the 16<sup>th</sup> – 17<sup>th</sup> centuries there were big fisheries on the lake in Pereyaslavl, where fishermen caught famous herrings. Everywhere fishers caught pikes, **breams, chubs, burbots, perches and ruffes**. In the Oka River there were sterlet and **sturgeon**.

Wild-hive beekeeping giving honey and wax took the second place among the peasant occupations. In peasant households **apiaries** appeared.

Hunting was not widely spread in the Vladimir land, because valuable fur animal had been exterminated for a long time. Though it was also possible to hunt **beavers**, whose fur was greatly evaluated. Peasants hunting beavers were subordinated to the tsar's hunter and were obliged to hunt beavers in the Klyazma and its tributary Koloksha and bring them to the tsar's treasury.

One of the oldest occupations, salt production, was widely spread in Pereyaslavl and its district. To produce gun powder, the demand of which in the 16<sup>th</sup> century increased because of frequent wars, a lot of **saltpeter** was required. Saltpeter works operated in Vladimir and Suzdal under the auspices of the local and central authorities.

The most complex work in pottery was the production of bricks and ceramic tiles. Most likely the craftsmen who could make bricks were very few. In 1628 the Stonework Office (Prikaz) in Moscow summoned 55 people including 10 highly-qualified craftsmen from Suzdal for public work.

Since long time a part of the cottage industry was flax, hemp, and wool processing. Flax and hemp processing was a very long and labour consuming process. The spun threads were either immediately used for making fabrics or first were dyed different colours and then used to make **motley** fabric. Similar operations were used in wool processing to produce woollen cloth of various qualities.

Thus in the 17<sup>th</sup> century peasant cottage industry whose role in peasant household was accessory began to produce a part of its products for sale, as a rule linen and woolen goods. These products were either sold by a peasant himself or by a **middleman** who specialized in buying and selling products made by peasant craftsmen.

By the 16<sup>th</sup> century the system of **feudal land tenure** had generally been formed. On the territory of the whole state the pomestye system became widely spread which resulted in land redistribution and large hereditary estates reduction (including the church and monastery possessions). The land redistribution was caused by various political events, especially by oprichnina, as a result of which the transfer of the landowners took place. It is known that Ivan the Terrible withdrew about 1000 boyar families from the Novgorod land and settled them in different places including the Vladimir land.

The information about the tsar's land possessions belongs to the 16<sup>th</sup> century. They were located in the Murom, Suzdal, Vladimir and Pereyaslavl districts.

The largest landowner in the Vladimir land was the Church. Monasteries' and Patriarch's estates were given substantial privileges. Patriarch owned lands in the Vladimir, Suzdal, Yuriev-Polsky, Pereyaslavl, Murom districts.

According to the census of 1678 there were 12 455 peasant households belonging the Patriarch and monasteries in the Vladimir land (in the Suzdal, Pereyaslavl, Yuriev-Polsky, Shuysky, Vladimir, Gorokhovets and Murom districts). The largest land possessions belonged to the Saviour and St. Euphimy Monastery (2906 households).

In central Russia in the 16<sup>th</sup> century the black soil or state communities and districts went under the authority of land owners. In this connection the community structure changed greatly. The main unit was still a village community uniting the peasants of one village. According to the growth of big feudal tenures more complex communities were formed uniting sometimes dozens of villages and submitting to the tenure administration.



**Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:**

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1) crop failure;           | a) лен;                         |
| 2) hemp;                   | b) гончарное производство;      |
| 3) mill;                   | c) сельскохозяйственные угодья; |
| 4) apiary;                 | d) под покровительством;        |
| 5) political disaster;     | e) неурожай;                    |
| 6) tsar's hunter;          | f) изразец;                     |
| 7) census;                 | g) волость;                     |
| 8) black soil communities; | h) пасека;                      |
| 9) cultivated lands;       | i) мельница;                    |
| 10) district;              | j) конопля;                     |
| 11) flax                   | k) политическое потрясение;     |
| 12) peasant household;     | l) черносошные общины;          |
| 13) ceramic tile;          | m) перепись;                    |
| 14) pottery;               | n) крестьянское хозяйство;      |
| 15) under auspice.         | o) царский ловчий.              |

**Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.**

1. К концу XVI века наблюдается значительный подъем сельскохозяйственного производства.

2. Главной отраслью земледелия в XVI – XVII веках оставалось хлебопашество.

3. Основной системой земледелия была паровая с трехпольным севооборотом.

4. В XVI веке большое распространение получают мельницы (в XIII – XV веках мельничное дело лишь зарождалось).

5. Поставка сена на конюшни феодалов входила в число крестьянских повинностей.

6. Повсеместно ловили щук, лещей, голавлей, налимов, ершей, окуней.

7. Для производства пороха, потребность в котором в XVI веке в связи с частыми войнами возросла, требовалось большое количество селитры.

8. В 1628 году Приказ каменных дел вызвал в Москву для казенных работ каменщиков и кирпичников, всего 55 человек из разных городов, в том числе 10 мастеров из Суздаля.

9. Издавна частью домашней промышленности была обработка льна, конопли, шерсти.

10. На территории всего государства получает широкое распространение помещная система, что привело к перераспределению земельной собственности, сокращению крупного вотчинного (в том числе церковно-монастырского) землевладения в пользу служилого дворянства.

11. Монастырским и патриаршим вотчинам были предоставлены значительные льготы.

12. По мере роста крупных феодальных владений образовывались сложные общины, объединяющие иногда десятки селений и подчиняющиеся вотчинной администрации.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. The first half of the 16<sup>th</sup> century up to 1560s was a relatively favourable period for the ... development of the country.

a) economic;                      b) sustainable;                      c) social.

2. The main branch of earth tilling was ... .

a) cattle breeding;                      b) poultry breeding;                      c) crops growing.

3. One of the leading occupations which played an important role in peasant life was ... .

a) wild-hive beekeeping;                      b) pottery;                      c) fishing.

4. With the development of wild-hive beekeeping ... appeared in peasants households.

a) mills;                      b) apiaries;                      c) cultivated lands.

5. The most wide-spread technical crops were... .

a) buckwheat;                      b) rye;                      c) flax and hemp.

6. ... was not widely spread in the Vladimir land, because valuable fur animal had been exterminated for a long time.

a) hunting;                                      b) weaving;                                      c) craft.

7. The ... who could make bricks were very few.

a) peasants;                                      b) craftsmen;                                      c) middlemen.

8. By the ... century the system of feudal land tenure had generally been formed.

a) 18<sup>th</sup>;    b) 17<sup>th</sup>;    c) 16<sup>th</sup>.

9. The largest landowner in the Vladimir land was the ... .

a) Boyars;    b) service people;                                      c) church.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. The first half of the 16<sup>th</sup> century up to 1560s was a relatively unfavourable period for the economic development of the country.

2. By the end of the 16<sup>th</sup> century there had been a significant growth of agricultural production, which was interrupted at the beginning of the 17<sup>th</sup> century by three years of war in 1601 – 1603.

3. In the 16<sup>th</sup> – 17<sup>th</sup> centuries when the North trade route to Asia was discovered, flax and linen goods were exported from the central districts of Russia including the Vladimir region.

4. Scythes, rakes, shovels and spades (both wooden and iron), crowbars are agricultural tools.

5. In the 16<sup>th</sup> – 17<sup>th</sup> centuries there were big fisheries on the lake in Pereyaslavl, where fishermen caught famous pikes.

6. Wild-hive beekeeping giving honey and wax took insignificant place among peasant occupations.

7. Saltpeter works operated in Vladimir and Suzdal under the auspices of the Church.

8. In 1628 the Stonework Office (Priказ) in Moscow summoned 55 people including 15 highly-qualified craftsmen from Suzdal for public work.

9. Since long time a part of the cottage industry was flax, hemp, and wool processing.

10. On the territory of the whole state the pomestye system became widely spread which resulted in the land redistribution and large hereditary estates increase.

11. The information about the tsar's land possessions belongs to the 17<sup>th</sup> century.

12. The main unit was still a noble community uniting the peasants of one village.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Was the 16<sup>th</sup> century a relatively favourable period for the economic development of the country?

2. What was the main branch of earth tilling?

3. What crops were widely spread in the 16<sup>th</sup> century?

4. What was the main system of earth tilling?

5. Were peasants engaged in cattle breeding?

6. What occupations played an important role in peasant life?

7. Why was salt production widely spread?

8. What was the most complex work in pottery?

9. Why was cottage industry labour consuming?

10. What form of land tenure had been formed by the 16<sup>th</sup> century?

11. The church was the largest landowner in the Vladimir land, wasn't it?

***Task 7. Complete the following sentences without consulting the text.***

1. By the end of the 16<sup>th</sup> century there had been ... .. , which was interrupted at the beginning of the 17<sup>th</sup> century by three years of ... .. in 1601 – 1603 and the greatest political disaster ... ..

2. The main branch of earth tilling was ... .. The main crop grown everywhere was ... . In the 16<sup>th</sup> century ... were widely spread.

3. Besides earth-tilling ... .. played an important role in peasant life.

4. The tsar's land possessions were located in the Murom, Suzdal, Vladimir and Pereyaslavl districts. The largest ... in the Vladimir land was the ... .

5. According to the growth of big feudal tenures, complex communities were formed uniting sometimes ... ..

***Task 8. Give the summary of the social and economic development of the Vladimir land in the 16<sup>th</sup> – 17<sup>th</sup> centuries.***

## ***Lesson 2. Ivan the Terrible and Alexandrova Sloboda***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) prayer	❖ МОЛИТВА
2) wrath	❖ ГНЕВ
3) to disgrace	❖ накладывать опалу, подвергнуть немилости
4) oprichnina office	❖ опричный приказ
5) oprichnina Boyar Council	❖ опричная Боярская дума
6) Ambassador Office	❖ Посольский приказ
7) mercenary	❖ наемник
8) cart	❖ обоз
9) loophole	❖ бойница
10) monk	❖ монах
11) engraving	❖ гравюра
12) belfry	❖ звонница
13) parchment	❖ пергамент
14) crosier	❖ посох

One of the most dramatic events in the history of Russia was the oprichnina closely connected with Alexandrova Sloboda, a small village on the territory of the former Pereyaslavl Principality.

It is known that even before the oprichnina Ivan IV visited Alexandrova Sloboda more than 10 times. On the 3<sup>rd</sup> of December 1564 the tsar went to the Holy Trinity and St. Sergius Monastery. The tsar made regular tours of the monasteries. They were both fulfilment of religious duty and peculiar inspections. After **prayers** Ivan IV did not go to Moscow but to Alexandrova Sloboda from which at the beginning of 1565 he sent two messages to the capital. One contained the list of the boyars' treasons – “they did not only steal from the treasury but also betrayed the country by their unwillingness to fight against enemies”. In the other message the tsar told merchants and all the people of Moscow that his “**wrath**” did not fall on them and they were not **disgraced**. And that the tsar “went away from lots of treasons as God had taught him”.

As a condition of his return Ivan IV demanded the acknowledgement of his unlimited authority in the struggle against treason and establishment of oprichnina to guard his life.

The boyar delegation accepted all these conditions. The tsar's oprichnina part included the significant territory of the state. All the boyars and members of the dvoryanstvo not enlisted in the oprichnina were banished, and their lands went to the people in the oprichnina service. Thus villages named after their owners from the oprichnina appeared in our lands: Belkovo, Bunakovo, Godunovo, Glinkovo, Otyaevo, Shuyskoe, etc. In turn princes Romodanovskies, Pozharskies, Kovrovs, Gundorovs, and Krivobarskies were exiled from the oprichnina.

By the autumn of 1565 all the mechanisms of the domestic government had been concentrated in Alexandrova Sloboda. All the **oprichnina offices**, the **oprichnina Boyar Council** and other institutions had been functioning there. The tsar controlled the foreign policy but the **Ambassador Office** was in zemshchina. Sloboda was the main place where international talks were conducted and agreements were signed. The Pope of Rome, ambassadors and embassies from England, Sweden, Crimea, the Grand Principality of Lithuania (Rzecz Pospolita), Denmark and other states came there. Since 1568 there had been the book-rewriting office and printing house. Gradually streltsy, foreign **mercenaries** and different service people quarters as well as market places grew around Sloboda. Sloboda

recruited service people, the **cart** trains with food staff, fodder and various necessities were sent there, different sorts of applicants came. From Sloboda the oprichnina army started against Novgorod.

In Sloboda the son of Ivan the Terrible, tsarevich Ivan Ivanovich, died lethally wounded by the father in a fit of wrath. Ivan IV came to Moscow only for a short period of time. He fortified Sloboda and added to the wooden fortifications built by the order of Elena Glinskaya the stone walls from the ground up to the height of the **loopholes**. The contemporaries considered the Kremlin in Alexandrova Sloboda to be one of the best in Moscow Russia.

One of the peculiarities of the life in Alexandrova Sloboda was its organization which was very similar to the monastic brotherhood, where the tsar himself performed the role of hegumen or Father Superior. Everybody wore black clothes similar to the **monks'** habits. Like in a monastery there were the common meals combined with the church services. (In the tsar's palace in Sloboda horrible feasts took place. The contemporaries vividly described them.) The common meals were not just feasts. They symbolized although superficial but equality, the reminiscence of that legendary time when princes were feasting with their warriors. But of course these feasts were far from monastic asceticism. The Danish ambassador Jacob Ulfeldt left the vivid description of the tsar's dinner. He wrote that the dinner consisted of 65 dishes, and there was such an abundance of gold and silver tableware that one plate had to be put into another one. By the way in the book which was published after his return home Ulfeldt put an **engraving** showing the view of the Kremlin in Alexandrova Sloboda with main cathedrals, a **belfry** and three tsar's palaces.

The second wife of Ivan the Terrible Maria Temryukovna died in Sloboda. And although according to the investigation held by a church council she was poisoned by some tsar's enemies, the Piskarevsky chronicle said that the tsar himself had poisoned Maria Cherkesskaya. In 1571 after the terrible fire in Moscow caused by the raid of the Crimean Khan Devlet Gerey two thousand girls from the noble families were brought to Alexandrova Sloboda, from them the tsar chose Marfa Sobakina, a 16-year-old dvoryanka from Novgorod, and married her in the Holy Trinity Cathedral in Alexandrova Sloboda in October 1571. In less than two weeks

Martha Vasilievna died under mysterious circumstances. After that in Alexandrova Sloboda there were four more wives of Ivan the Terrible. In 1580 in the same Holy Trinity Cathedral Feodor, the second son of Ivan the Terrible, married Irena, the sister of Boris Godunov.

One of the secrets of Alexandrova Sloboda is the history of the famous tsar's library. There is evidence that the Grand Moscow Princes had a very rich library preserving ancient Greek **parchments**, Latin Chronographs, Hebrew manuscripts, and, perhaps, the yarlyks of Batu and other khans. During one of his visits to Moscow in 1566 Ivan IV personally looked through the documents in the Kremlin archives and took part of them to Sloboda. The ancient inventory of the tsar's archives mentioned 231 cases with books and documents. When he moved to Alexandrova Sloboda, Ivan IV took the documents from 31 cases.

In November 1581 the tsar palace in Alexandrova Sloboda witnessed the quarrel between Ivan IV and his son Ivan, the successor to the throne. During it the tsar hit his son with the **crosier** into the temple inflicting the fatal wound. As is testified by the contemporaries he nearly went mad of grief. The tsar followed the coffin of his son in funeral procession to the Archangel Cathedral. He was walking after the sledge hitting his forehead against the coffin top, sobbing and asking forgiveness of the deceased, his mother and God. After the departure of Ivan IV the Alexandrova Sloboda lost its former importance and glory.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) treason;               | a) учреждение опричнины;  |
| 2) unlimited authority;   | b) изгонять;              |
| 3) domestic government;   | c) деревянные укрепления; |
| 4) to banish;             | d) монашеское братство;   |
| 5) in exile;              | e) смертельная рана;      |
| 6) wooden fortifications; | f) неограниченная власть; |
| 7) hegumen;               | g) богослужение;          |
| 8) common meals;          | h) общая трапеза;         |



- |                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 9) funeral procession;               | i) напоминание;           |
| 10) to go mad of grief;              | j) похоронная процессия;  |
| 11) fatal wound;                     | к) помешаться от горя;    |
| 12) reminiscence;                    | l) в ссылке;              |
| 13) church services;                 | м) гроб;                  |
| 14) monastic brotherhood;            | н) внутреннее управление; |
| 15) establishment of the oprichnina; | о) настоятель, игумен;    |
| 16) coffin.                          | р) измена.                |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. Одним из самых драматичных событий в истории России XVI века была опричнина, тесно связанная с небольшим поселением на территории бывшего Переславль-Залесского княжества – Александровой слободой.

2. Условиями возвращения на престол царь назвал: признание за ним права казнить «изменников» по своему усмотрению и учреждение опричнины для «охранения» его жизни.

3. В государев опричный удел вошла значительная территория государства.

4. Уже к осени 1565 года в Александрову слободу сошлись все нити управления внутренними делами.

5. Внешней политикой ведал царь, но Посольский приказ оставался в земщине.

6. С 1568 года в слободе располагались царская книгописная палата и печатный двор.

7. В палатах слободы проходили жутковатые пиры, описание которых оставили современники.

8. Одной из особенностей быта Александровой слободы было учреждение там подобия монашеского братства, где роль игумена и настоятеля исполнял сам царь.

9. Общая трапеза – это не просто застолье, но и символ равенства, хотя и показного, как напоминание о временах, когда князья пировали со своими дружинниками.

10. Есть свидетельства того, что московские князья владели богатейшей библиотекой, в которой хранились древнейшие греческие пергаменты, латинские хронографы, древнееврейские манускрипты, возможно, ярлыки Батыея и других ханов.

11. В ноябре 1581 года в царском дворце в Александровой слободе произошла ссора между Иваном IV и его сыном, наследником престола Иваном Ивановичем, в ходе которой царь ударил сына посохом, нанеся ему смертельную рану в висок.

**Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.**

1. It is known that even before the oprichnina Ivan IV visited Alexandrova Sloboda more than ... times.

- a) 10;                      b) 15;                      c) 5.

2. After prayers Ivan IV did not go to Moscow but to Alexandrova Sloboda from which at the beginning of 1565 he sent ... messages to the capital.

- a) five;                      b) three;                      c) two.

3. All the boyars and members of the dvoryanstvo not enlisted in the oprichnina were banished, and their lands went to ... .

- a) clergy;                      b) peasants; c) the people in the oprichnina service.

4. Sloboda was the main place where international talks were conducted and ... were singed.

- a) declaration;                      b) warrants;                      c) agreements.

5. From Sloboda the oprichnina army started against ... .

- a) Novgorod;                      b) Moscow;                      c) Pereslavl-Zalesky.

6. One of the secrets of Alexandrova Sloboda is ... .

- a) its organization;  
b) the history of the famous tsar's library;  
c) the quarrel between Ivan the IV and his son.

7. The ancient inventory of the tsar's archives mentioned ... cases with books and documents.

- a) 231;                      b) 101;                      c) 321.

8. ... wife of Ivan the Terrible Maria Temryukovna died in Sloboda.  
 a) the first;                      b) the second;                      c) the forth.
9. In the tsar's palace in Sloboda horrible ... took place.  
 a) rites;                              b) fights;                              c) feasts.
10. After the departure of Ivan IV Alexandrova Sloboda ... its former importance and glory.  
 a) lost;                                b) gained;                              c) preserved.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. One of the two tsar's messages contained the list of the boyars' treasons – "they did not only steal from the treasury but also betrayed the country by their unwillingness to fight against enemies".
2. In the second message the tsar told merchants and all the people of Moscow that his "wrath" fell on them and they were disgraced.
3. The boyar delegation didn't accept the tsar's conditions.
4. All the boyars and members of the dvoryanstvo not enlisted in the oprichnina retained their lands.
5. By the autumn of 1565 all the mechanisms of the domestic government had been concentrated in Moscow.
6. Ivan IV didn't fortify Alexandrova Sloboda.
7. There was a secular way of life in Alexandrova Sloboda.
8. The Danish ambassador Jacob Ulfeldt wrote that the tsar's dinner was simple.
9. The tsar's son Ivan was buried in the the Holy Trinity Cathedral in Alexandrova Sloboda.
10. After the death of his son Ivan IV continued to live in Alexandrova Sloboda.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. What was one of the most dramatic events in the history of Russia in the 16<sup>th</sup> century?

2. How many times did Ivan IV visit Alexandrova Sloboda before the oprichnina?
3. What were the conditions of the tsar's return?
4. What government was concentrated in Alexandrova Sloboda?
5. How was the foreign policy performed?
6. What was one of the peculiarities of the life in Alexandrova Sloboda?
7. How did the Danish ambassador Jacob Ulfeldt describe the tsar's dinner?
8. What viewpoints on the death of the second wife of Ivan the Terrible exist?
9. What was one of the secrets of Alexandrova Sloboda?
10. What quarrel took place in Alexandrova Sloboda?
11. When did Alexandrova Sloboda lose its importance?

***Task 7. Be ready to speak on the topic "The Oprichnina of Ivan the Terrible".***

### ***Lesson 3. The Time of Troubles in the Vladimir Land. Dmitry Mikhailovich Pozharsky***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1) enslavement | ❖ закабаление  |
| 2) aggravation | ❖ обострение   |
| 3) impostor    | ❖ самозванец   |
| 4) to retreat  | ❖ отступить    |
| 5) rapacious   | ❖ алчный       |
| 6) loot        | ❖ добыча       |
| 7) archbishop  | ❖ архиепископ  |
| 8) associate   | ❖ сподвижник   |
| 9) looting     | ❖ разорение    |
| 10) mockery    | ❖ глумление    |
| 11) merciless  | ❖ безжалостный |

12) plunderer	❖ мародер, грабитель
13) requisitions	❖ поборы
14) calamity	❖ бедствие
15) uprising	❖ восстание
16) mutiny	❖ мятеж
17) stronghold	❖ оплот
18) detachment	❖ отряд
19) to be weary of	❖ устать от
20) outrage	❖ бесчинство
21) rebel	❖ повстанец
22) palisade	❖ частокол
23) to flee	❖ бежать (от противника)
24) scattered	❖ разрозненный
25) apostate	❖ вероотступник
26) to hoist	❖ поднять
27) baptism of fire	❖ боевое крещение
28) oath of allegiance	❖ воинская присяга
29) headman	❖ староста

The beginning of the 17<sup>th</sup> century was called the Time of Troubles by the contemporaries. The cause of disturbance may be referred to the fear of oprichnina terror, autocracy introduction, the crisis of the patrimonial system of land tenure and **enslavement** of the peasantry in the late 16<sup>th</sup> century.

Among the basic reasons for the Time of Troubles an important place is taken by the dynastic crisis born in the late 16<sup>th</sup> century (after the death of Tsar Feodor in 1598). This crisis contributed to the **aggravation** of the conflict inside the ruling clique and made possible the success of the **impostor** False Demetrius I, whose movement in 1604 – 1605 initiated the Time of Troubles. On the territory of the Vladimir and Suzdal land the main events spread around the second stage of the Time of Troubles linked with the name of False Demetrius II during the reign of Shuisky.

The new impostor appeared in the town of Starodub in the summer of 1607. Many people believed the new impostor because there were the

stubborn rumours that Tsar Dimitry was still alive. False Demetrius II started his campaign in Starodub in September 1607 and was moving fast to Moscow. To a great extent it was assisted by the letters sent all over the country signed by “Tsar Dimitry”. These letters promised that the residents of Vladimir, Suzdal and other towns of our land would receive all kinds of benefits.

In the beginning of June 1608 False Dimitry II approached Moscow closely, but he could not take it and **retreated** to the village of Tushino where he staged a fortified camp. All the major roads to Moscow were blocked including the Yaroslavl road to the Trinity Monastery and Alexandrova Sloboda and the road to Vladimir and Suzdal. The Tushino soldiers began to capture the central and northern parts of the country. In Tushino where the **rapacious** interests overwhelmed the political ones it was clearly understood that the best **loot** could be got in the northern and central towns and firstly in the towns of the Vladimir and Suzdal lands. False Demetrius II sent A. Lisovsky to conquer the Vladimir lands.

In the late September of 1608 the rule of False Demetrius was recognized by the inhabitants of Alexandrova Sloboda and Youriev-Polsky. Suzdal took the side of the impostor. The **archbishop** Galaktion also did not resist the recognition of the impostor’s power but soon he was brought down from the chair and died in exile.

The residents of Vladimir at first tried to organize resistance to False Demetrius II. In early October 1608 by Shuisky’s order the Vladimir governor Tretyak Seitov gathered the troops of Vladimir, Suzdal, Murom, Yaroslavl, Pereyasavl and Rostov citizens. Soon he suffered a defeat in one of the battles and was taken prisoner.

At that time another Vladimir governor boyar Ivan Godunov (a relative of Boris Godunov), taking advantage of the absence of T. Seitov, got in touch with the new Suzdal governor F. Pleshcheev and started an agitation for the impostor. Ivan Godunov did not want to support Shuisky who in his own words brought him to total ruin. I. Godunov began to serve the second impostor even not knowing yet who took upon himself the name of Tsar Demetrius I. Godunov agitated for False Demetrius II in the town of

Murom too. Soon Vladimir, Murom and their districts recognized the power of False Demetrius II. By the end of October 1608 all the lands in the Vladimir-Suzdal Principality had been in his power.

Meanwhile Tushino was turning into the second capital. Its own Boyar Duma and offices (*prikaz*) were organized there. Trying to win over to his side the Russian boyars and nobles the impostor generously awarded his **associates** with titles, appointments, lands and money. For instance, Mikhail Velyaminov who was appointed the governor of Vladimir by False Demetrius II received the ownership of several villages in Pereyaslavl district, the Suzdal governor Pleshcheev was given the boyar title of *okolnichy*. His other supporters were given lands around Vladimir and Suzdal that belonged to the members of the Moscow government including Shuisky princes. The **looting** of the Russian churches by the Poles and **mockery** over the Orthodox faith excited hate and rage against the Tushino government.

The impostor set extra taxes upon the population. The collection of provisions and money in Vladimir and Suzdal was entrusted to the Polish noble Lisovsky who was known among the impostor's commanders as the most **merciless**.

The Polish army commander Yan Sapega sent his troops to the towns and districts of the Vladimir land without notifying the impostor whom he generally used to ignore. Since November 1608 Sapega supported by the Polish troops unceremoniously ruled over Vladimir and Suzdal land as if on occupied territory. Town people and peasants of Suzdal district had to find shelter from the punitive forces in forests.

The foreign **plunderers** did not spare the monasterial estates. Thus the archimandrite Iov of Suzdal Saviour and St. Euthimius monastery complained to the False Dmitry II against the innumerable **requisitions** of the Polish officers arriving from Yan Sapega. False Dmitry unwilling to spoil the relations with the Orthodox Church prohibited the Poles to enter the monastery estates and ordered Sapega to send a safeguard to the Saviour and St. Euthimius Monastery. However, the prohibitions of the Tushino ruler did not help.

The **calamities** of the population in the Time of Troubles were aggravated by the activities of the robbers and marauders. Since the autumn of 1608 the gang of Feodor Nalivaiko had been plundering the Vladimir and Suzdal land.

The movement against the Tushino government was born in the outlying districts of the Vladimir and Suzdal land far from the administrative centres occupied by the large garrisons of the False Dmitry's troops. It was also the result of the fact that people who had to leave their homes being discontented with the rule of the impostor accumulated there. As early as in November 1608 spontaneous uprisings flared up in several towns of the lands beyond Moscow including Gorohovets. In early December the **uprising** started in the town of Shuya and Shuisky district as a whole. At the same time active combat actions against the Tushino troops started in Nizhny Novgorod. They waited for the arrival to their town of the Shuisky's commander Sheremetiev who at that time was suppressing the **mutiny** in Astrakhan. The Tushino troops tried to capture the town before Sheremetiev's arrival. They hurried to Nizhny Novgorod from two sides: from Murom and the troops gathered by Suzdal governor Pleshcheev – from Balakhna. In the battle near Nizhny Novgorod the Tushino forces were defeated. They could not succeed in taking this well-fortified town. From that moment Nizhny Novgorod became the **stronghold** of Liberation movement within the territory near the Oka and the Klyazma rivers.

In mid-December of 1608 Gorohovets separated from the impostor, and in January 1609 – several villages of the Vladimir district. In early 1609 the basic combat actions between the Tushino supporters on the one side and the mutineers and the government forces on the other side took place near Murom.

Learning that the forces of the tsar are fighting their way to Murom and then to Vladimir Jan Sapega took a number of urgent measures to strengthen his positions in these towns. He ordered Vladimir governor Velyaminov and Murom commanders N. Pleshcheev and C. Navalkin to gather people from the town settlements and districts. By mid-January the Nizhny Novgorod troops occupied almost the entire Murom road.



In early February 1609 there were rather large **detachments** from different districts of Suzdal. The members of the movement meant to unite their forces and to liberate not only their own towns and villages but all the Russian lands. At that time Suzdal governor Pleshcheev was in the village of Danilovo at the head of the Tushino detachment. Here in February 1609 he suffered a defeat from the Kostroma governor Bobarkin loyal to Shuisky and retreated with his remaining troops to Suzdal. Jan Sapega sent Polish soldiers to his rescue. At the same time False Dmitry II having learned about the sad state of affairs in the Suzdal land instructed to send Alexander Lisovsky with a force of the Don Cossacks, Polish and Lithuanian soldiers there.

The population **weary of** the requisitions and **outrage** was afraid of every meeting with the Tushino Cossacks and Poles. Thus, knowing that on the road to Suzdal the regiment of Lisovsky would pass through Yuriev-Polsky even the Tushino commander Bolotnikov was worried. In his letter to Jan Sapega Bolotnikov reminded the Polish commander that Yuriev had already been looted by the Polish companies that took all of the forages for people and horses. The commander asked the Polish leader to send the Lisovsky's regiment through the wealthy villages of the Yuriev district – Nikomarna and Sima.

The battle between the **rebels** and the Tushino force was held on the approaches to Suzdal on February 17, 1609. This time Pleshcheev took a revenge. Moreover the Tushino troops did not leave the town while fighting as it was ordered by Jan Sapega. The mutineers were defeated in this battle.

At that time the fighting between the rebels and the Tushino forces took place on the right bank of the Klyazma River. In March 1609 commander Alyabiev loyal to Shuisky with a Nizny Novgorod force moved to the walls of Murom but did not dare to storm the town. Having got the news of the approach of the Nizhny Novgorod force natives of Murom took to arms themselves. The town uprising flared up in the middle of March. Soon after taking Murom commander Alyabiev loyal to Shuisky sent his forces to Vladimir, which approached it on March 27, 1609.

The approach of the government forces to Vladimir urged the residents to the open resistance against False Dmitry. The Vladimir townspeople raised an uprising. The Tushino commander Velyaminov was captured and taken to confession in front of the archpriest of the cathedral church. After the confession the archpriest publicly declared Velyaminov the enemy of the Russian state. He was taken to the square and stoned to death by all the people. The Vladimir residents took prisoner many of the impostor supporters. Then the town gates were opened to Nizhny Novgorod troops and swore an oath of allegiance to Shuisky.

The rebels from other places came to Vladimir together with the Nizhny Novgorod forces. The Vladimir garrison included a detachment of the Moscow and Astrakhan regular army soldiers (streltsy), whom Sheremetiev sent ahead of the main force.

The victories held by Shuisky commanders influenced the spirit of the people. The discontent with the False Dmitry's government was growing. This mood was cleverly used by Shuisky who sent his letters to all the towns with a vivid description of the victories of the tsar commanders and Liberation movement. In the middle of April such a letter came also to Suzdal. It said that Shuisky is ready to forgive the betrayal of townspeople if they raised to fight against False Dmitry and drove away the Tushino supporters from Suzdal. For this the tsar promised to award them with things they did not even have on their mind. The letters dispatched in late May to Vladimir and Murom thanked commanders on behalf of Shuisky for bringing these towns into submission. Still both Suzdal and Yuriev-Polsky remained for long the strongholds of the Tushino power in the Vladimir land.

By early summer 1609 the government troops supported by the rebel forces could take a firm hold in two districts – the Vladimir and Murom lands.

The Vladimir residents pinned great hopes on the forces of Sheremetiev who had about 3500 soldiers under his command. The position of Vladimir might have been radically strengthened with the arrival of these troops. In early August Sheremetiev held a big victory over the forces at the

Crimean Khan Uraz-Magmet 10 km from Murom and only after that he went to Vladimir.

In the end of August Sheremetiev went to Suzdal from Vladimir but he was defeated by A. Lisovsky and had to retreat. Sheremetiev had no numerical superiority to clear the area beyond Moscow of the interventionists and he was made to stay in Vladimir awaiting the coming of the Prince Skopin-Shuisky.

The joining of the forces of Skopin and Sheremetiev took place in Alexandrova Sloboda in November 1609. That was a great success of the Shuisky government. A big army gathered in Alexandrova Sloboda, which included regular Swedish forces of Delagardy, service people used to military profession as well as town and peasant volunteers. By late November the Skopin's force approached the Trinity and St. Sergius Monastery. At the same time Skopin sent commanders – Prince Lykov and Prince Boryatinsky to Suzdal. There was some misunderstanding between them and Boryatinsky refused from taking part in the campaign. This helped the defeat of the government forces in the clash with the Lisovsky's troops. Lisovsky came to Suzdal back in October 1609 and “fortified himself with **palisade** as best as he could and acted from there all winter”.

The victorious advance of the Scopin's forces brought about great confusion in the ranks of the Tushino camp. Suspicious of conspiracy False Dmitry II **fled** from Tushino to Kaluga in late December 1609. In January 1610 Trinity and St. Sergius Monastery was freed and the army of Sapega was beaten near Dmitrov in the battle of 26<sup>th</sup> February. After the defeat Lisovsky's force left Suzdal. In late April the tsar Shuisky assigned his commanders there. In this way the Skopin's army succeeded in delivering almost all of the Klyazma area from the power of Tushino. To a great degree the successes of the talented military leader were due to the unification of the **scattered** local district forces around his army. On March 12, 1610 Skopin-Shuisky triumphantly entered Moscow.

On July 17, 1610 Tsar Shuisky was dethroned and the power went over to the boyar government headed by Mstislavsky. The boyars decided to invite the Polish Prince Vladislav to the Russian throne. On September 21

the boyars let in the Polish army into Moscow. The Poles behaved rather unceremoniously. The country was threatened with the loss of independence. Murom, Vladimir, Suzdal as well as Nizhny Novgorod, Yaroslavl and other towns one by one declared their support for the Liberation movement to free Moscow from the Poles.

In late January 1611 Nizhny Novgorod informed the Ryazan governor Lyapunov that decision was taken with the council of all the lands to liberate immediately Moscow from the **apostate** boyars and Poles. A boyar, commander Mosalsky from Murom together with the nobles and Cossacks came to assist Nizhny Novgorod. The banner of the rebellion was **hoisted** in the ancient cities of Vladimir and Murom.

On March 19, 1611 near the capital the decisive battle took place between the Moscow government forces and the people's volunteers in the course of which the detachments of the local district forces commanded by Prince Dmitry Pozharsky excelled. Pozharsky himself was heavily wounded. The Poles managed to keep hold of the Kremlin and Kitai-gorod. The troops of the First volunteer army started the siege of Moscow.

Dmitry Pozharsky took his first **baptism of fire** in combat with the troops of False Dmitry I. He took part in the election campaign of the Godunovs. In general confusion and betrayal Pozharsky did not violate his **oath of allegiance** to the Godunovs.

A number of brilliant victories held by Prince Dmitry Pozharsky when the other commanders of Shuisky were defeated once and again by the Tushino forces strengthened the Pozharsky's reputation as a brave and energetic commander.

Tsar Vasily Shuisky marked the service of Pozharsky by land allocation. In June 1609 Prince Dmitry got an estate in Suzdal district. He received the village of Nizhniy Landekh with 20 small villages, seven settlements and 12 empty lands.

In autumn 1611 the second volunteer army began to form where one of the main organizers was the Nizhny Novgorod **headman** Kuzma Minin. Pozharsky recovered in Mugreevo when Smolensk nobles arrived to him

from Nizhniy Novgorod with the request to take the command over the volunteer army. Minin and Pozharsky became the leaders of the Second volunteer army and started to work out the military plans.

Pozharsky suggested Suzdal as the gathering point of the volunteers from beyond Moscow and Ryazan towns. It was thought to call the new Zemsky Sobor, which was to solve the problem of the tsar election. The Cossack troops of Ivan Zarutsky were counteracting the Nizhny Novgorod ones. The Cossacks under the leadership of atamans brothers Prosovetskys took hold of Vladimir and Suzdal.

From March 1612 the forces of Minin and Pozharsky gained a foothold in Yaroslavl. Soon Pozharsky's gained forces freed Pereslavl-Zalessky and Vladimir from Cossacks. In July 1612 Pozharsky got news that the Polish king Sigizmund sent commander Khodkevitch with the army and forages to help his Moscow garrison. The Yaroslavl volunteer army headed by Pozharsky urgently marched to Moscow.

While their regiments slowly moved to Moscow by the awful roads, Pozharsky handed over the command to his assistants – Kuzma Minin and Prince Ivan Khovansky and with a small suite left for Rostov where Minin and Khovansky with the regiments joined him. In August 1612 the volunteer army of Minin and Pozharsky approached Moscow and threw back the forces of hetman (commander) Khodkevitch. On October 26, 1612 the Polish garrison in the Kremlin capitulated and Moscow was free.

Later Pozharsky as one of the most notable heroes of the liberation war received a number of military appointments. He also made a judicial career. In 1636 – 1637 he headed the Moscow Justice Prikaz (ministry).

In his late years Pozharsky lived in his patrimonial estate Mugreevo village. He owned a large area of the arable lands and was the biggest landowner in his district. He collected a significant library and patronized folk artists and poets. Skomorokhs felt at ease in his estates. With his own means Pozharsky built several churches.

Prince Pozharsky deceased on April 20, 1642. He was buried in his family burial ground in the Saviour and St. Euthimius Monastery of Suzdal.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) autocracy introduction;    | a) завоевать;             |
| 2) a fortified camp;          | b) землепользование;      |
| 3) to conquer;                | c) потерпеть поражение;   |
| 4) rage;                      | d) упорный слух;          |
| 5) extra taxes;               | e) карательные отряды;    |
| 6) shelter;                   | f) воспользоваться;       |
| 7) discontented;              | g) захваченный в плен;    |
| 8) requisitions;              | h) введение самодержавия; |
| 9) to pin one's hopes;        | i) знамя восстания;       |
| 10) mutineer;                 | j) закабаление крестьян;  |
| 11) to defeat;                | k) братья за оружие;      |
| 12) to forgive the betrayal;  | l) привести в покорность; |
| 13) to take a revenge;        | m) поднять восстание;     |
| 14) land tenure;              | n) недовольный;           |
| 15) to take to arms;          | o) победить;              |
| 16) to raise an uprising;     | p) мятежник;              |
| 17) to suffer a defeat;       | q) поборы;                |
| 18) to take advantage of;     | r) убежище;               |
| 19) to bring into submission; | s) простить измену;       |
| 20) enslavement of peasantry; | t) дополнительные налоги; |
| 21) stubborn rumour;          | u) ярость, злость;        |
| 22) taken prisoner;           | v) укрепленный лагерь;    |
| 23) banner of the rebellion;  | w) возложить надежды;     |
| 24) punitive forces.          | x) отомстить.             |

***Task 3. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Among the basic reasons for the Time of Troubles an important place is taken by ... born in the late 16<sup>th</sup> century (after the death of Tsar Feodor in 1598).

- a) the dynastic crisis;
- b) the fear of oprichnina terror;
- c) autocracy introduction.

2. On the territory of the Vladimir and Suzdal land the main events spread around the second stage of the Time of Troubles linked with the name of ... .

- a) False Dmitry III;    b) False Dmitry II;    c) False Dmitry I.

3. Trying to win over to his side the Russian ... the impostor generously awarded his associates with titles, appointments, lands and money.

- a) peasants;                    b) townspeople;                    c) boyars and nobles.

4. In the beginning of June 1608 False Dmitry II approached Moscow closely, but he could not take it and retreated to the village of Tushino where he staged a ... .

- a) fortified camp;    b) monastic brotherhood;    c) castle.

5. In the late September of 1608 the rule of False Dmitry ... by the inhabitants of Alexandrova Sloboda and Yuriev-Polsky.

- a) was limited;                    b) was recognized;                    c) was stopped.

6. The residents of Vladimir at first tried to organize ... to False Dmitry II.

- a) support;                    b) help;                    c) resistance.

7. The movement against the Tushino government was born in the outlying districts of the ... far from the administrative centres occupied by the large garrisons of the False Dmitry's troops.

- a) Ryazan land;    b) Vladimir and Suzdal land;    c) Smolensk land.

8. The Vladimir residents pinned great hopes on the forces of ... who had about 3500 soldiers under his command.

- a) Sheremetiev;                    b) Jan Sapega;                    c) Lisovsky.

9. The Skopin's army ... delivering almost all of the Klyazma area from the power of Tushino.

- a) succeeded in;                      b) failed;                      c) prevented from.

10. A number of brilliant victories held by Prince Dmitry Pozharsky when the other commanders of Shuisky were defeated once and again by the Tushino forces strengthened the Pozharsky's reputation as a ... commander.

- a) brave and energetic;              b) coward;                      c) merciless.

11. In autumn 1611 the second ... began to form where one of the main organizers was the Nizhny Novgorod headman Kuzma Minin.

- a) government forces;              b) regular army;              c) volunteer army.

12. Pozharsky also made ... career.

- a) an academic;                      b) a medical;                      c) a judicial.

***Task 4. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. The beginning of the 16<sup>th</sup> century was called the Time of Troubles by the contemporaries.

2. The new impostor appeared in Suzdal in the summer of 1607.

3. Many people didn't believe the new impostor because there were the stubborn rumours that Tsar Dmitry was still alive.

4. In Tushino where the political interests overwhelmed the rapacious ones it was clearly understood that now the best loot can be got in the northern and central towns and firstly in the towns of the Vladimir and Suzdal lands.

5. The residents of Vladimir at first tried to organize resistance to False Dmitry II.

6. The impostor didn't set any extra taxes upon the population.

7. The approach of the government forces to Vladimir urged the residents to the open support of False Dmitry.

8. The victorious advance of the Skopin's forces brought about great confusion in the ranks of the Tushino camp.

9. The boyars refused to invite the Polish Prince Vladislav to the Russian throne.



10. The country wasn't threatened with the loss of its independence.

11. Dmitry Pozharsky took his first baptism of fire in combat with the troops of False Dmitry II.

12. The Nizhny Novgorod headman Kuzma Minin was one of the leaders of the second volunteer army.

***Task 5. Translate from Russian into English using the words given in brackets.***

1. Начало XVII века в России современники назвали Смутным временем (*contemporaries*).

2. Причинами Смуты были ужас перед опричным террором, введение самодержавия, кризис поместной системы землепользования, закабаление крестьян, династический кризис (*autocracy introduction, the patrimonial system of land tenure, enslavement, dynastic crisis*).

3. На территории Владимиро-Суздальского края основные события развернулись на втором этапе Смуты, связанном с именем Лжедмитрия II во время царствования Василия Шуйского.

4. В начале июня 1608 года Лжедмитрий II подошел к Москве, но взять ее не смог, отступил к селу Тушино и основал укрепленный лагерь (*staged a fortified camp*). Тушино превращалось во вторую столицу. Здесь были организованы своя Боярская дума и приказы (*Boyar Duma and offices (prikaz)*).

5. Самозванец обложил население дополнительными налогами (*imposter, to set*). На Владимиро-Суздальской земле сбор продовольствия и денег был поручен польскому шляхтичу А. Лисовскому, а он среди воевод самозванца слыл едва ли не самым безжалостным (*merciless*).

6. Движение против тушинского правительства зародилось на окраинах Владимиро-Суздальской земли (*in the outlying districts*).

7. 19 марта 1611 года под столицей произошло решающее сражение (*decisive battle*). Ополчением командовал князь Дмитрий Михайлович Пожарский (*volunteer army*).

8. Организатором второго ополчения стал нижегородский староста Кузьма Минин (*headman*).

9. 26 октября 1612 года польский гарнизон в Кремле капитулировал и Москва обрела свободу (*Polish garrison capitulated*).

10. Пожарский, один из самых известных героев освободительной войны, не раз получал военные назначения и сделал судебную карьеру.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. What were the main reasons of the Time of Troubles?
2. What movement in 1604 – 1605 initiated the Time of Troubles?
3. When did the imposter False Dmitry II approach Moscow?
4. Whom did False Dmitry II send to conquer the Vladimir land?
5. Was the imposter recognized by the residents of the Vladimir and Suzdal land?
6. What was the role of Tushino?
7. What excited hate and range against the Tushino government among the residents of the Vladimir land?
8. What aggravated the calamities of the population in the Time of Troubles?
9. Where was the movement against the Tushino government born?
10. What were the results of an uprising against False Dmitry in Vladimir?
11. What impact did the victorious advance of the Scopin's forces have?
12. Why was the country threatened with the loss of its independence?
13. Why are Kuzma Minin and Prince Dmitry Pozharsky considered to be the most notable heroes of the Liberation war?

***Task 7. Be ready to speak on the main events which took place in the 17<sup>th</sup> century in the Vladimir region.***

UNIT 8  
**THE VLADIMIR LAND IN THE 18<sup>TH</sup> CENTURY**

***Lesson 1. The Vladimir Land and Peter I. The Vladimir Gubernia  
Establishing***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

1) dockyard	❖ верфь
2) to take the veil	❖ постричься в монахини
3) fasting	❖ пост
4) to strive	❖ стремиться
5) of no avail	❖ безуспешный, бесполезный
6) interrogation	❖ допрос
7) accomplice	❖ сообщник, единомышленник
8) cell	❖ келья
9) turbulent	❖ бурный
10) ordinance	❖ указ, манифест
11) region ruled by the governor general	❖ наместничество
12) rampant lion	❖ стоящий на задних лапах лев
13) Fiscal Chamber	❖ Казенная палата
14) Welfare Board	❖ Приказ общественного призрения
15) orphanage	❖ приют
16) asylum	❖ смирительный дом, богадельня
17) assessor	❖ судебный заседатель
18) litigant parties	❖ стороны, участвующие в судебном процессе
19) town governor	❖ городничий
20) town hall	❖ ратуша
21) arbitrariness	❖ произвол
22) bribe-taking	❖ взяточничество
23) embezzlement	❖ казнокрадство
24) family register	❖ родословная книга
25) earthenware	❖ глиняная посуда
26) lime	❖ известь

Since the 17<sup>th</sup> century the history of the Vladimir Region was connected with the name of Peter I (Peter the Great). Since 1689 his visits here became regular, which was connected with the construction of the fleet on the lake in Pereslavl. As far back as in 1681 on the Yauza River the old English boat that the Peter himself called “the grandfather of the Russian Navy” was launched. However, the Yauza was too small for “the water play”, and very soon Peter was informed that the nearest big lake in about 120 km from Moscow was the Pereslavl Lake. Being afraid that his mother would not let him go (at that time Peter was not 17 yet) the tsar said that he had promised to make a pilgrimage to the Holy Trinity monastery and from the monastery he secretly went to Pereslavl.

In January Peter married the daughter of the okolnichy Lopukhin Eudoxia. But already in April 1689 he was on the Pereslavl Lake, where several ships were being built.

In September 1689 after the suppression of the streltsy uprising Peter, his mother and wife went to Alexandrova Sloboda. Together with the tsar all the court and “play regiments” came there. In the vast fields surrounding Sloboda the tsar held military exercises under the guidance of Patrick Gordon. Meanwhile in the Pereslavl **dockyard** the works went on. Peter was so carried away by this construction, that in February Lev Kirillovich Naryshkin, the tsar’s uncle, and prince Boris Golitsyn had to come to Pereslavl to persuade the tsar to return to Moscow, because a Persian ambassador had arrived in Moscow and the tsar had to receive him in the Kremlin according to the diplomatic etiquette.

On the 1<sup>st</sup> of May the first ship was launched on the Pereslavl Lake, and in July all the court went to Pereslavl and stayed there till September. But the Pereslavl Lake turned out too small and Peter ordered to transfer the construction of the Navy to the White Sea.

During these years little by little Peter grew cool towards his wife, despite their son, tsarevich Alexei, who was born in February 1698. Eudoxia was sent to Suzdal where in the Nunnery of the Intercession she was forced **to take the veil** and a new name as a nun, Helen. But in half a year the exiled tsarina stopped thinking of monastic vows, praying and **fasting** and resumed secular life. She established contacts with her Moscow relatives dissatisfied

with Peter's reforms. In 1710 Stepan Bogdanovich Glebov was sent to Suzdal for recruiting, he regularly visited nun Helen in the nunnery. Eudoxia did not abandon the hope to resume her lost position at the court and see her son Alexei on the throne. Gradually some clergy and Moscow aristocracy unsatisfied with the reforms of Peter the Great united around Lopukhina who named herself "tsarina Eudoxia". Thus, in Suzdal the centre of the opposition was formed which **strove** for Peter's dethronement, putting Alexei on the throne and restoration of the old way of life.

Alexei grew far from his father. All the attempts of Peter I to accustom Alexei to the state affairs and make him his helper were **of no avail**. Eventually Peter suggested his son that he should either take monastic vows or go abroad. Alexei having taken 10 thousand gold coins fled abroad in 1716. Only after long talks diplomats succeeded in bringing Alexei back to Russia. The investigation began. At the very first **interrogation** that was held by Peter himself it became clear that there was the strong opposition to him. The tsarevich named all his supporters and **accomplices**. And the "case of tsarevich Alexei" investigation began. Very soon the investigation was also held in Suzdal. There in the **cell** of Eudoxia the investigators found two letters exposing her communication with Peter's enemies. 35 people involved in this case were found guilty, Alexei's aunt tsarevna Maria, Eudoxia Lopukhina's brother Abraham Lopukhin, prince Semeon Shcherbatov who named Eudoxia "the true sovereign tsarina" in his letters, princess Troekurova, Eudoxia's sister, and others being among them. In March 1718 the sentence was passed in connection with this case: some people including Stepan Glebov were sentenced to death, others were beaten with a knout and exiled to Siberia, and former tsarina was sent to the Assumption Nunnery in Staraya Ladoga. All these **turbulent** events took place when Peter the Great had already begun the active conducting of his reforms: the reform of the state government, the army reform, the administrative reform, etc.

In 1708 Russia was divided into eight gubernias. Some towns of the Vladimir land such as Vladimir, Suzdal, Pereslavl, Murom, and Shuya were included into the Moscow Gubernia; and Gorokhovets and Vyazniky Sloboda were in the Kazan Gubernia. After the second territorial

administrative reform of 1719 all the towns of the Vladimir land (Rostov and Lukh were also included into their number) constituted four provinces of the Moscow Gubernia. The administrative territorial division had been as such up to the gubernia reform of Catherine the Great of the end of the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

On the 7<sup>th</sup> of November 1775 a new “**Ordinance** on the Government of the Gubernias of the Russian Empire” was issued under which the Empire was divided into 50 gubernias with the population of 300 – 400 male persons, in turn every gubernia was divided into districts, each of them with the population of 20 – 30 thousand male persons. At the head of the gubernia administration there was a deputy or the governor general governing two or three gubernias, each of them was headed by a governor. According to the order of the 1<sup>st</sup> of September 1778 the Vladimir **region ruled by the governor general** was established. It consisted of the Vladimir, Tambov and Penza gubernias. Into the Vladimir gubernia all the old Russian lands were included.

When the Vladimir gubernia was established, the status of a town was given to the villages Alexandrova sloboda, Vyazniky sloboda, Melenky, Kirzhach, Pokrov, Sudogda and Kovrov.

New gubernias and districts were established according to the principle of the better government, taking into account fiscal and administrative interests. The boundaries of the new districts did not coincide with the boundaries of the old administrative units formed in course of time.

According to the order of Catherine II all the centres of gubernias and districts should have had their coat-of-arms. They symbolized the peculiarities of the regional fauna and flora, the occupations of local population and historical traditions of the region. In the upper more honourable part of the heraldic shield of the district coat-of-arms there was the emblem of the centre of the gubernia, a **rampant lion** considered the symbol of princely power since olden times. According to the gubernia reform the local government was as following. Under the governor there was the gubernia board of administration. It declared the government decrees and supervised their fulfilment. The **Fiscal Chamber** was in charge of the local industry, taxation, incomes and expenses. The new institution was the

**Welfare Board** responsible for schools, hospitals, **orphanages**, workhouses and **asylums**.

The reform introduced numerous courts, including criminal and civil court chambers and below them the estate courts for the gentry, ordinary townspeople and peasants. In the courts in addition to judges there were elected (for a three-year term) **assessors**. There was also a special court of conscience whose duty was reconciliation of the **litigant parties** and appointing mediators for this purpose.

The towns were marked out as special administrative units. They were headed by a **town governor** or commandant. They possessed only administration functions. The justice was administered by the town magistrates or **town halls** and by the “verbal court” in charge of trade affairs. At the head of the magistrate there was an elected town mayor.

The **arbitrariness**, **bribe-taking** and **embezzlement** of funds were the usual practice among the officials of all ranks. Thus, the vice-governor of the Vladimir fiscal chamber prince Uhtomsky was exposed as a bribe-taker.

Certain changes in the local administration were introduced by the “Letters Patent to the Nobility” or as it was officially named “The Certificate of the Rights, Liberties and Preferences of the Gracious Russian Nobility” (1785). The province nobility constituted a corporation – the noble “society” whose body was the noble’s assembly. It was called once in three years in the districts and in the province. The assembly elected the officials – district and province marshals, police captains and assessors. The right of vote at the election was granted to the noblemen of the officer’s rank who had reached 25 years of age and possessed estates. Only noblemen who had yearly income of no less than 100 roubles had the right to be elected for the noblemen’s positions.

The duties of the province marshal of the nobility were very difficult: the presence at the Welfare Board and overseeing its charity institutions, participation in recruiting soldiers, supervision over roads and delivery of the post horses to the stations, control of the tax calculation to treasury from landowners’ peasants. To fulfil these duties, he had to travel much and conduct great correspondence. The main duty of the deputy assembly was

compiling of the province **family register**. The district marshals submitted alphabetical lists of all the nobles possessing real estate in their districts. However, this listing did not mean that the family would be put down into the family register. Only after the demonstration and discussion of the proofs in the deputy assembly and by its decision (not less than 2/3 of the votes) the family was enrolled in the family register. In 1780 – 1790s the family register of the Vladimir province numbered 145 noble families.

The assembly had the right to deprive of the noble title. For instance, in 1797 the lieutenant's widow Anna Rudina was deprived of the noble title for the murder of a house-serf girl. During the reign of Peter I the nobility institutions had found themselves under still greater control of the state administration.

The Vladimir Province bordered on the Yaroslavl and Kostroma provinces in the north, on the Nizhny Novgorod Province – in the east, the Tambov Province – in the south-east, the Ryazan Province – in the south, the Moscow Province – in the west and south-west, the Tver Province – in the north-west. The province area almost did not change since its foundation in 1778. The major rivers of the province were the Oka, the Klyazma, the Uvod, the Teza, and the Loukh. The rivers flowed through the lowland. In the 18<sup>th</sup> century some of them were navigable: the Oka in its whole length within the province limits (about 165 km) and the Klyazma down from the town of Kovrov to the mouth. All the summer through boats with corn, wine, French vodka, tobacco, cast iron pots, frying pans, hammers, iron and all kinds of artillery munitions, ash, fish, melted fat, hemp, glass, and plaster of Paris sailed to St. Petersburg, Nizhny Novgorod, Kazan and other cities. Along the Klyazma the **earthenware** and **lime** was transported. In the rivers there were 20 kinds of fish including starlet and white salmon in the Oka and the Klyazma, sometimes sturgeons came from the Volga into the Oka.

The province had rather many lakes but all of them were small with the exception of the Pleshchevo Lake (or the Pereslavl Lake) with the area of 45 sq. km. Next in size followed the Gus lake (an artificial one, near the Gus iron works) and the Sakhtysh (in the north-eastern part of the Suzdal district). Many small lakes of the former river-bed were in the flood-plains of the Oka and the Klyazma rivers.



The forests on the territory of the province covered about 69 % of the area, swamps – about 3,65 %. The famous Opolye took a part of the Yuriev-Polsky, Suzdal, Pereslavl-Zalessky and Vladimir districts. Similar in physical and geographical conditions but a smaller pocket of forest-steppe was situated in the outlying south-eastern part of the province along the right bank of the Oka below Murom. In general, the region had non-fertile podzol soils. The overwhelming majority of the population was constituted by peasants.

According to the data of 1780s the province numbered 420 thousand male persons, 66,3 % of which were landowners' peasants, 24,4 % were peasants of the economical department and 8,3 % were palace peasants.

The nobility numbered about 26 000 in 1795. To count the population the data from the old family registers was used, but the registers were often filled in quite negligently.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1) play regiments;                          | a) светская жизнь;                              |
| 2) be carried away;                         | b) наместничество;                              |
| 3) monastic vow;                            | c) помещичьи крестьяне;                         |
| 4) secular life;                            | d) потешные полки;                              |
| 5) region ruled by<br>the governor general; | e) Казенная палата;                             |
| 6) rampant lion;                            | f) судебный заседатель                          |
| 7) gubernia board<br>of administration;     | g) дворянское собрание;                         |
| 8) Welfare Board;                           | h) капитан-исправник;                           |
| 9) Fiscal Chamber;                          | i) алебастр;                                    |
| 10) litigant parties;                       | j) вершить суд;                                 |
| 11) assessor;                               | k) уездный предводитель;                        |
| 12) town governor;                          | l) монашеский обет;                             |
| 13) to administer justice;                  | m) стороны, участвующие<br>в судебном процессе; |

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 14) Letters Patent to the Nobility;   | n) Приказ общественного призрения;     |
| 15) province marshal of the nobility; | o) стоящий на задних лапах лев;        |
| 16) cast iron;                        | p) городничий;                         |
| 17) district marshal;                 | q) городской голова;                   |
| 18) town mayor;                       | r) Жалованная грамота дворянству;      |
| 19) noble's assembly;                 | s) губернский предводитель дворянства; |
| 20) police captain;                   | t) пенька;                             |
| 21) hemp;                             | u) чугун;                              |
| 22) landowners' peasants;             | v) губернское правление;               |
| 23) plaster of Paris.                 | w) увлечься.                           |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. Вместе с царем в Александрову слободу прибыл весь двор и потешные полки.

2. Так в Суздале возник оппозиционный центр, который стремился свергнуть Петра, возвести на престол Алексея и вернуться к старому укладу жизни.

3. 7 ноября 1775 года был издан манифест «Учреждения для управления губерний Всероссийской империи», на основе которого вся территория была разделена на 50 губерний с населением по 300 – 400 тыс. душ мужского пола в каждой; в свою очередь, в губерниях выделялись уезды с населением по 20 – 30 тыс. душ мужского пола.

4. Во главе губернской администрации стоял наместник или генерал-губернатор, управлявший двумя-тремя губерниями, каждую из которых возглавлял губернатор.

5. По указу императрицы все губернские и уездные города обязаны были иметь свой герб. В гербовой эмблеме отражались особенности занятий населения, растительного и животного мира, исторических традиций данного региона.

6. Символом Владимирской губернии стал лев, стоящий на задних лапах, издавна считавшийся знаком княжеской власти.

7. Промышленностью, сбором налогов, доходами и расходами ведала Казенная палата.

8. Во главе города стоял городничий или комендант.

9. Суд в городах вершили городовые магистраты или ратуши и словесный суд, ведавший торговыми делами.

10. Обычными явлениями среди чиновников всех рангов были произвол, взяточничество и казнокрадство.

11. Некоторые изменения в местное управление внесла «Жалованная грамота дворянству», или, как она официально называлась, «Грамота на права, вольности и преимущества благородного Российского дворянства» (1785 год).

12. Собрания выбирали должностных лиц – уездных и губернских предводителей, капитан-исправников и заседателей.

13. Обязанности губернского предводителя были многосложными: присутствие в Приказе общественного призрения и надзор за его благотворительными заведениями, участие в наборе рекрутов, наблюдение за дорогами и поставкой почтовых лошадей на станции, контроль раскладки налогов в казну с помещичьих крестьян.

14. По Клязьме перевозили глиняную посуду, известь. В реках водилось до 20 пород рыб, в том числе в Оке и Клязьме – «стерлядь, белая рыба, иногда заходили из Волги в Оку и осетры».

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Since the 17<sup>th</sup> century the history of the Vladimir Region was connected with the name of ... .

a) Alexey Mikhailovich;    b) Peter I;    c) Catherine I.

2. On the 1<sup>st</sup> of May 1690 the first ship was launched on ... , and in July all the court went to Pereslavl and stayed there till September.

a) the Pereslavl Lake;    b) the Yauza River;    c) the White sea.

3. Gradually some clergy and Moscow aristocracy ... with the reforms of Peter the Great united around Lopukhina who named herself “tsarina Eudoxia”.

- a) satisfied;                      b) half-satisfied;                      c) unsatisfied.

4. All the attempts of Peter I to accustom Alexei to the state affairs and make him his helper were ... .

- a) useless;                      b) useful;                      c) fruitful.

5. In the cell of Eudoxia the investigators found ... letters exposing her communication with Peter’s enemies.

- a) 2;                      b) 3;                      c) 4.

6. According to the order of Catherine II all the centres of gubernias and districts should have had their ... .

- a) anthem;                      b) coat-of-arms;                      c) banner.

7. The Fiscal Chamber was in charge of the local ... , taxation, incomes and expenses.

- a) craft;                      b) trade;                      c) industry.

8. The Welfare board was responsible for ... , hospitals, orphanages, workhouses and asylums.

- a) schools;                      b) colleges;                      c) universities.

9. There was a special court of conscience whose duty was ... of the litigant parties and appointing mediators for this purpose.

- a) division;                      b) reconciliation;                      c) unification.

10. The noble’s assembly was called once in ... years in the districts and in the province.

- a) 3;                      b) 4;                      c) 5.

11. The main duty of the deputy assembly was compiling of the province ... register.

- a) clan;                      b) family;                      c) community.

12. During the reign of Peter I the nobility institutions had found themselves under ... control of the state administration than under Catherine II.

- a) greater;                      b) less;                      c) the same.

13. Along the Klyazma the earthenware and ... was transported.

- a) lime;                      b) timber;                      c) bricks.

14. The overwhelming majority of the population was constituted by ... .

- a) craftsmen;                      b) peasants;                      c) nobility.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. Since 1699 visits of Peter I to the Vladimir region became regular, which was connected with the construction of the fleet on the lake in Pereslavl.

2. Eudoxia, Peter's I wife, was sent to Vladimir where in the Nunnery of the Intercession she was forced to take the veil and a new name as a nun, Helen.

3. Gradually some clergy and Moscow aristocracy unsatisfied with the reforms of Peter the Great united around Lopukhina who named herself "tsarina Eudoxia".

4. In 1708 Russia was divided into ten gubernias.

5. After the second territorial administrative reform of 1719 all the towns of the Vladimir land constituted four provinces of the Vladimir Gubernia.

6. According to the order of the 1<sup>st</sup> of September 1778 the Vladimir region ruled by the governor general was established.

7. In the upper part of the heraldic shield of the district coat-of-arms there was the emblem of the centre of the gubernia – the rampant lion.

8. The arbitrariness, bribe-taking and embezzlement of funds were the usual practice among the officials of all ranks in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

9. In 1785 the right of vote at the election was granted to the noblemen of the officer's rank who had reached 25 years of age, possessed estates and had yearly income of no less than 100 roubles.

10. To fulfil his duties, the province marshal of the nobility had to travel much and conduct great correspondence.

11. In 1780 – 1790s the family register of the Vladimir province numbered 195 noble families.

12. In the 18<sup>th</sup> century the Oka and the Klyazma were navigable.

13. The province had rather many lakes but all of them were small.

14. In general, the region had fertile soils.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. Why did visits of Peter I to the Vladimir Region become regular since 1689?
2. Where did the tsar hold military exercises under the guidance of Patrick Gordon?
3. When was the first ship launched on the Pereslavl Lake?
4. What nunnery was Eudoxia Lopukhina send to?
5. What town became the centre of the opposition which strove for Peter's dethronement, putting Alexei on the throne and restoration of the old way of life?
6. What two gubernias were the towns of the Vladimir land included into in 1708?
7. What gubernia were all the towns of the Vladimir land included into after the second territorial administrative reform of 1719?
8. When was the Vladimir region ruled by the governor general established?
9. What emblem was depicted on the coat-of-arms of Vladimir?
10. What was the Fiscal Chamber responsible for?
11. What was the Welfare Board responsible for?
12. What were the functions of the noble's assembly?
13. What were the duties of the province marshal of the nobility?
14. What goods were transported along the Klyazma and the Oka?
15. Did peasants constitute the overwhelming majority of the population of the province?

***Task 7. Give the summary of:***

- a) the connection of Peter the Great and his wife Eudoxia with the Vladimir land;
- b) the Vladimir gubernia establishing.

## ***Lesson 2. Social and Economic Policy in the 18<sup>th</sup> Century***

***Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:***

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1) land-surveying        | ❖ межевание земель                                 |
| 2) coachman              | ❖ ямщик  |
| 3) motley                | ❖ пестрый, разношерстный                           |
| 4) gentry                | ❖ мелкопоместное дворянство                        |
| 5) indigent              | ❖ малоимущий                                       |
| 6) estate                | ❖ имение, поместье                                 |
| 7) mining                | ❖ разработка полезных<br>ископаемых                |
| 8) apprentice            | ❖ ученик, подмастерье                              |
| 9) handicraft            | ❖ изделие художественного<br>ремесла               |
| 10) tanning craft        | ❖ кожевенный промысел                              |
| 11) commodity production | ❖ товарное производство                            |
| 12) to spring up         | ❖ возникнуть                                       |
| 13) linen                | ❖ полотно, льняная ткань                           |
| 14) printed cloth        | ❖ набивная ткань (ткань<br>с печатным рисунком)    |
| 15) calico               | ❖ ситец  |
| 16) broadcloth           | ❖ тонкое сукно                                     |
| 17) entrepreneurship     | ❖ предпринимательство                              |
| 18) petty bourgeoisie    | ❖ мещане   |
| 19) ware                 | ❖ посуда, изделие                                  |
| 20) to bore              | ❖ сверлить   |
| 21) to forge             | ❖ ковать   |
| 22) quitrent             | ❖ оброк  |
| 23) harness-making       | ❖ шорное ремесло (производство<br>ременной упряжи) |
| 24) joinery              | ❖ столярное ремесло                                |

Peasant landownership on the territory of the Vladimir Region ceased to exist due to mass allocation of lands in the course of the 16<sup>th</sup> and especially 17<sup>th</sup> centuries. In the 18<sup>th</sup> century great changes were made in the land law, which influenced both the position of the noble men in general and the land tenure. An important measure which strengthened the rights of the nobility to land was the **General land-surveying**. The decree to start it was issued in 1765.

In early 1769 the land-surveying began on the territory of the Vladimir land. By the beginning of the land-surveying in the districts of the Vladimir province there had been the landownership of the Board of Economy, palace, confiscation office, monasteries, churches, Vladimir fiscal chamber as well as of merchants and **coachmen**. The overwhelming majority of the lands belonged to the noblemen.

The composition of the Vladimir nobility was rather **motley**. 62 families had the titles of princes, dukes and barons. Among them there were the descendants of the ancient and noble families – the Pozharskies, Gagarins, Shuiskies, Odoevskies, Khilkovs, Lopukhins as well as the representatives of the “new nobles” who had got their titles and land estates rather recently: the Potyomkins, Razumovskies and at last the persons or descendants of the persons who had come to Russia’s central area for different reasons from the recently annexed territories like princes Dadianovs, Gelovanovs, barons Delvig, Lenber and others. 30 km from Vladimir in the village of Undol there was the estate of the great Russian military commander Alexander Suvorov.

47 noble families had been known in the land since the 17<sup>th</sup> or even the 16<sup>th</sup> centuries. They preserved their estates until the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century when serfdom was abolished. They included the Apraksins, Buturlins, Meshcherskies, Bezobrazovs, Pleshcheevs and Ukhtomskies.

The overwhelming number of the Vladimir noblemen (around 64 %) belonged to small **gentry**, i. e. owning up to 100 male serfs, medium gentry (101 – 500 male serfs) made up about 11 % and only 2 % were large estate owners with more than 500 male serfs. Besides there were noblemen who had neither estates nor serfs, at least on the territory of the Vladimir province



(about 2 %). Part of the **indigent** nobility could not subsist on the incomes only from their estate and had to enter public service or look for other sources of subsistence.

In the course of General land-surveying that lasted for many decades the landowners strived to add on as much land as possible to their **estates** using every means like making drunk the witnesses, damaging the crops and armed clashes.

In the beginning of the century in connection with the needs of the developing industry **mining** and extraction of natural resources grew. In particular, near the town of Kovrov, where there were large lime strata, peasants mined stone for construction and took it to Moscow and Tver for sale. On the bank of the Oka river there were deposits of clay, which included pyrites. As was testified by Peter Simon Pallas, a member of St. Petersburg Academy of Sciences: “Common people gathered them and took to the glass factories nearby”.

New handicrafts appeared due to the growing needs of population, nobility in particular. Some peasants became **apprentices** of the most known Moscow craftsmen and coming back to their native places taught their fellow villagers the new professions. Thus, for example, the galloon craft appeared among the peasants of the palace Alexandrova Sloboda. One of the old and specific crafts of the Vladimir land was icon-painting. The villages of Mstyora, Palekh and Kholui of the Vyazniky district were long known as the centres of the Russian icon-painting. As early as in the 17<sup>th</sup> century the icon painting became the main occupation of the peasants of these villages. Small icon-painting enterprises appeared which clearly defined the division of labour (preparation of materials, division of painting process into a series of consecutive operations). However, frequently the **handicrafts** of the village icon painters were far from the objects of art. In 1723 three peasants from Palekh brought 834 icons to St. Petersburg out of which only 26 ones were recognized by the Synod as suitable for sale (medium quality work), the rest were ordered to be cleared away.

**Tanning craft** was common among the peasants of the Shuya and Vyazniky districts. In Shuya soap-boiling production was also developed

and contemporaries observed that the soap was extremely good there and it was delivered to different places all over Russia. Murom wheat kalatches (small white loaves) enjoyed the same popularity (a kalatch was depicted on the emblem of the town of Murom) and was taken for sale to other towns. At the same time a notable departure of the population possessing certain professional skills to towns to work at large enterprises was observed.

The Vladimir province was a part of the central industrial area of the country. Its industrial profile was formed in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. The leading branch of industry was the textile industry. It exceeded other industries as to the cost of the produce, number of the employed workforce. The textile industry existed in the form of small production (home crafts, craftsmanship, small-scale **commodity production**) and manufactories. Although small-size enterprises prevailed in number the main role in the industry belonged to the manufactories – the first form of large-scale production. The manufactory **sprang up** on the basis of the small-scale industry in the regions where it was widely spread.

The first textile linen manufactory was introduced by the company of a foreigner Tames in 1720. Its departments were situated in Moscow and the village of Luknovo in the Vladimir district. In 1780 – 1790s textile manufactories popped up like mushrooms after the rain. In 1797 there were 125 of them including 96 **linen**, 26 **printed cloth** (linen and **calico**), 2 silk and 1 **broadcloth** ones. Most of the linen manufactories were located in the Shuya (57), Vyazniky (14) and Yuriev (11) districts. All the printed cloth enterprises were in the Shuya and Yuriev districts, silk weaving ones were in the Pokrov district and the only broadcloth one was in the Gorokhovets district. The industrial upsurge in the last quarter of the 18<sup>th</sup> century was conditioned by the expanding social basis of the **entrepreneurship**. The laws allowed noblemen and merchants, **petty bourgeoisie** and state-owned peasants to open industrial enterprises. However, serfs still had no right to have own factories, but those who had capitals bypassed the law opening manufactories in the name of their estate holders. In 1797 the peasants of all classes owned 62 manufactories, merchants – 58, petty bourgeoisie – 1, noblemen – 4 ones.

The leading place in textile industry belonged to linen production. It found raw materials (linen and hemp yarn) on the spot as well as working force represented by peasants who acquired necessary labour skills in domestic crafts. In 1797 the textile industry employed 11 429 workmen while 11 204 (98 %) of them were employed in linen manufactories. (This estimation does not include a great number of peasants working for the manufactory at home). The overwhelming majority of the workmen consisted of peasants-seasonal workers working for a wage. Linen manufactories made inexpensive coarse motley or striped cotton fabric of hemp yarn, thick canvas for a little bigger price, more expensive thin, wide linen, light linen fabric, striped or wavy cloth used for women's skirts, more rarely strong striped linen. Sailcloth went abroad through St. Petersburg port in big lots. Motley cotton and striped or wavy cloth were marketed inside the province, in Moscow, southern towns, in Ukraine. Coloured linen cloth went to China. The products of other textile enterprises – silk and broadcloth – were sold in the home market. The broadcloth was mostly sold to the state, military office.

The second industry defining the industrial profile of the province was glass manufacturing. In 1720s the Vladimir district had two factories. In 1756 a glass and crystal factory was opened by the Oryol (later Moscow) merchant Maltsov. The factory was transferred here from the Mozhaisky district. In 1797 the Vladimir Province had 16 glass manufactories – 4 merchants' ones and 12 noblemen's ones. They employed 709 workmen including 127 possession ones, 401 serfs, 181 hired ones. They made products worth 23 450 roubles. The most part of the factories produced window glass, table and pharmacy glassware of the same green glass. At the Maltsovs' factories they made white glass, various crystal **ware** decorated with highly artistic cutting. The goods from glass manufactories were sold everywhere in the European part of Russia. The Maltsovs' artistic crystal ware was delivered to the St. Petersburg imperial court.

In the second half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century the Oka river metallurgical region took shape. Its enterprises were located in the adjoining Tula, Nizhny Novgorod, Arzamas, Kasimov and Murom districts. The first metallurgical

works on the territory of our region was the works on the Kolpinka river in the Murom district. In 1759 the brothers Andrey and Ivan Batashovs founded an iron foundry on the Gus river where the rivers Kolpinka and Narma flew into it, in the Vladimir (later Melenky) district. In 1779 the Batashovs built Zheleznitsa and Pristan iron works on the Zheleznitsa river, the tributary of the Oka river in the Melenky district, 50 km from the town of Melenky. In 1783 the brothers divided the works. The Zheleznitsa and Pristan ones went to Ivan Batashov, while the Gus one to Andrey. The same year the more enterprising elder brother Andrey set up the Upper Unzha iron foundry on the river Unzha.

Metallurgical works were centralized manufactories. They produced sheet and boiler iron, steel, metal ware, nails. At the Zheleznitsa works they **bored** the artillery guns cast at the Vyksa works of the same Batashovs, **forged** knees (the iron knees to fasten ship parts) for the Black Sea Fleet. As distinct from the linen manufactories, which used almost exclusively hired labour, the metallurgical ones were based on the forced labour of workmen. The access of the Batashovs to serf labour especially widened after they “restored” the nobility in 1778. And in such a way the Batashovs’ works entered the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

The biggest rural markets were located in Sima village (the entire Sima rural district consisting of 8 big and 5 small villages belonged to the princes Golitsyns) and in Teikovo village (estate of P. Tatishchev). The merchants came here from the nearby towns and settlements; there were peasants who had to sell part of the crops or their handicraft to pay the **quitrent**.

In Vladimir small-size production prevailed into which capitalist relations penetrated step by step.

On the verge of the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries there was more than a dozen brick factories of different sizes. The largest among them was the factory of merchant Sveshnikov. Construction was a rather developed industry in Vladimir. Large construction sites sometimes enrolled up to a hundred workmen. Small scale construction was conducted by the groups of 10 – 12 men. The tanning industry was stimulated in the city by the growing demand for Russian leather in the foreign markets. Already in the middle of the 18<sup>th</sup>

century the Vladimir tanners supplied yuft (Russian leather) to St. Petersburg for exports abroad. (Yuft was a special type of leather of combined tanning.)

A special place in Vladimir was taken by vegetable growing and gardening which acquired the trading character in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. In Vladimir vegetable gardens the usual set of crops for central Russia was grown: carrots, cabbages, cucumbers, but onions were the most widespread ones and were sent in large batches to Moscow, St. Petersburg and other cities. Mostly cherries and partly apples were grown in the orchards. There were four brands of cherries: “Vasilievskaya”, “Roditelskaya”, “Kalachikha”, “Kislikha”. The first two ones remarkable for large and juicy berries became known far beyond the limits of the Vladimir land. Cherries were taken to the fairs and markets of big cities. Juice was also made, barrels of which were carried to Moscow and this way the city dwellers owning such orchards had sizable profit.

Tailoring, shoe-making, **harness-making**, **joinery**, silversmith and coppersmith trades developed in Vladimir. There were also a confectioner’s shop and a hatter’s shop.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1) Board of Economy;      | a) источник существования; |
| 2) confiscation office;   | b) занятая рабочая сила;   |
| 3) source of subsistence; | c) товарное производство;  |
| 4) galloon;               | d) ремесло;                |
| 5) tanning craft;         | e) парусное полотно;       |
| 6) employed workforce;    | f) холст;                  |
| 7) home craft;            | g) полотно, льняная ткань; |
| 8) craftsmanship;         | h) Коллегия экономики;     |
| 9) commodity production;  | i) предпринимательство;    |
| 10) linen;                | j) столярное ремесло;      |

- |                            |                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 11) industrial upsurge;    | k) позумент (шитая золотом тесьма); |
| 12) entrepreneurship;      | l) листовое и котельное железо;     |
| 13) hemp yarn;             | m) канцелярия конфискации;          |
| 14) canvas;                | n) большими партиями;               |
| 15) sailcloth;             | o) оброк;                           |
| 16) iron foundry;          | p) кожевенное ремесло;              |
| 17) sheet and boiler iron; | q) пеньковая пряжа;                 |
| 18) quitrent;              | r) домашний промысел;               |
| 19) in large batches;      | s) железодельный завод;             |
| 20) joinery.               | t) промышленный подъем.             |

***Task 3. Find the equivalent English sentences in the text.***

1. Важным мероприятием, укрепившим права дворянства на землю, было Генеральное межевание земель, указ о начале которого был издан в 1765 году.

2. В ходе Генерального межевания, продолжавшегося много десятилетий, помещики стремились как можно больше земель «прирезать» к своим имениям, применяя любые способы: спаивание понятых, потраву посевов, вооруженные столкновения.

3. Некоторые крестьяне становились учениками наиболее известных московских ремесленников и, возвращаясь на родину, обучали своих односельчан новым специальностям.

4. Такой же популярностью пользовались и пшеничные муромские калачи (калач даже был изображен на гербе города Муром), развозившиеся на продажу в другие города.

5. Текстильная промышленность существовала в формах мелкого производства (домашние промыслы, ремесло, мелкое товарное производство) и мануфактуры.

6. В Шуйском и Юрьевском уездах находились все набоечные заведения, в Покровском – шелкоткацкие; единственная суконная мануфактура – в Гороховецком уезде.

7. Законы разрешали открывать промышленные заведения дворянам и купцам, мещанам и казенным крестьянам.

8. Подавляющее большинство работных людей составляли крестьяне-отходники, работавшие по вольному найму.

9. На заводах купцов Мальцовых производилось белое стекло, разнообразная хрустальная посуда, украшенная высокохудожественной гравировкой.

10. В отличие от полотняных мануфактур, применявших почти исключительно наемный труд, металлургические базировались на подневольном труде работных людей.

11. Сюда приезжали купцы из близлежащих городов и селений, было много крестьян, которым для уплаты оброка приходилось продавать часть урожая или продукцию своих промыслов.

12. Кожевенное производство в городе стимулировалось растущим спросом на русские кожи на внешнем рынке.

13. Выращивался на владимирских огородах обычный для центральной России набор овощных культур: морковь, огурцы, капуста, но наибольшее распространение имел лук, который большими партиями шел в Москву, Петербург и другие города.

14. Первые два сорта, отличавшиеся крупными и сочными плодами, получили известность далеко за пределами Владимирского края.

***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. The composition of the Vladimir nobility was rather ... .

a) homogenous;      b) rich;      c) motley.

2. 30 km from Vladimir in the village of ... there was the estate of the great Russian military commander Alexander Suvorov.

a) Palekh;      b) Undol;      c) Mstyora.

3. The overwhelming number of the Vladimir noblemen belonged to ... .

a) small gentry;      b) medium gentry;      c) large estate owners.

4. On the bank of the Oka river there were deposits of ... , which included pyrites.

- a) sand;                      b) clay;                      c) iron.

5. The villages of Mstyora, Palekh and Kholui of the Vyazniky district were long known as the centres of the Russian ... .

- a) icon-painting;              b) soap-boiling;              c) textile industry.

6. ... wheat kalatches enjoyed popularity in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

- a) Shuya;                      b) Murom;                      c) Vladimir.

7. The leading branch of industry was the ... in the Vladimir province of the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

- a) metallurgy;              b) textile industry;              c) glass manufacturing.

8. The leading place in the textile industry of our region belonged to ... production.

- a) linen;                      b) silk;                      c) broadcloth.

9. The goods from glass manufactories of the Vladimir province were sold everywhere in the ... part of Russia.

- a) European;              b) Asian;                      c) Northern.

10. In 1759 the brothers Andrey and Ivan Batashovs founded an iron foundry on the ... river.

- a) Oka;                      b) Klyazma;                      c) Gus.

11. The biggest rural markets were located in ... village and in Teikovo village.

- a) Kholui;                      b) Sima;                      c) Undol.

12. The largest ... factory was the factory of merchant Sveshnikov.

- a) glass;                      b) brick;                      c) iron.

13. In Vladimir vegetable gardens the usual set of crops for central Russia was grown: onions, carrots, cabbages, cucumbers, but ... were the most widespread ones and were sent in large batches to Moscow, St. Petersburg and other cities.

- a) carrots;                      b) cabbages;                      c) onions.



***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. By the beginning of the land-surveying in the districts of the Vladimir province there had been the landownership of the Board of Economy, palace, confiscation office, monasteries, churches, Vladimir fiscal chamber as well as of noblemen, merchants and coachmen.

2. 57 noble families had been known in the land since the 17<sup>th</sup> or even the 16<sup>th</sup> centuries.

3. The overwhelming number of the Vladimir noblemen belonged to medium gentry.

4. In the course of General land-surveying the landowners didn't try to add land to their estates.

5. Near the town of Kovrov peasants mined stone for construction and took it to Moscow and Tver for sale.

6. One of the old and specific crafts of the Vladimir land was icon-painting.

7. In 1780 – 1790s the glass manufactories popped up like mushrooms after the rain.

8. Coloured linen cloth produced by linen manufactories went to China.

9. The Maltsovs' artistic crystal ware was delivered to the St. Petersburg imperial court.

10. In the first half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century the Oka river metallurgical region took shape.

11. As distinct from the linen manufactories, which used forced labour, the metallurgical ones were based on the hired labour of the workmen.

12. In the middle of the 18<sup>th</sup> century, the Vladimir tanners supplied yuft (Russian leather) to Moscow for exports abroad.

13. Mostly cherries and partly apples were grown in the orchards of Vladimir.

14. Cherries were taken from Vladimir to the fairs and markets of Europe.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. When did the land-surveying begin on the territory of the Vladimir land?
2. How many families of the Vladimir land had the titles of princes, dukes and barons in the 18<sup>th</sup> century?
3. Were there any noblemen who had neither estates nor serfs on the territory of the Vladimir province?
4. What villages of the Vladimir land were long known as the centres of the Russian icon-painting?
5. Among the peasants of what districts was tanning craft common?
6. In what forms did textile industry exist in the Vladimir province in the 18<sup>th</sup> century?
7. Where were linen, printed cloth and silk weaving manufactories located?
8. What production took the leading place in the textile industry of our region in the 18<sup>th</sup> century?
9. What did linen manufactories produce?
10. Who opened a glass and crystal factory in 1756?
11. What did glass factories produce?
12. Who built iron foundries in the Oka river region?
13. What did metallurgical works produce?
14. What was grown in Vladimir vegetable gardens?
15. What was grown in Vladimir orchards?

***Task 7. Be ready to speak on crafts and manufactories which existed on the territory of the Vladimir land in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.***

### *Lesson 3. Culture of the 18<sup>th</sup> Century*

*Task 1. Study the vocabulary and read the text given below:*

1) clerks	❖ приказные люди
2) service class people	❖ служилые люди
3) Regulations of Public Schools	❖ Устав народных училищ
4) at the expense	❖ за счет
5) native of	❖ уроженец
6) porcelain	❖ фарфор
7) death penalty	❖ смертная казнь
8) mansion	❖ большой дом, особняк
9) wing	❖ флигель
10) almshouse	❖ богадельня
11) column cap	❖ капитель (венчающая часть колонны)
12) garland	❖ гирлянда
13) to gild	❖ покрывать позолотой
14) to upholster	❖ обивать
15) glazed tile stove	❖ изразцовая печь
16) pedlar (= higgler)	❖ офеня, торговец мелким товаром вразнос
17) cheap popular print	❖ лубочная картинка

Russian culture assumed secular character in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. Secular school education in Russia was started by Peter the Great. In 1714 arithmetic schools began to be formed where the children of the noblemen, **clerks**, **service class**, craftsmen and trade people were taken. They were to study “figures” (i. e. arithmetic) and some of geometry. In 1716 teachers were sent to the provinces of Russia. It was only in Yuriev-Polsky of the Vladimir land that an arithmetic school was established where 18 children of the nobles studied. The trade people addressed their request to the Senate not to make their children study for they had to help their parents at home. In 1722 an

arithmetic school was also opened in Vladimir. Alexei Matveev was appointed the teacher with a salary of 3 roubles a month. The school could gather 7 boys from 10 to 15 years old, but only 2 school boys graduated from the school in 1725. This year no new school children joined the school. Matveev did not get his salary and the school was closed. In 1727 Suzdal, Yuriev-Polsky, Pereslavl-Zalessky and Vladimir had Admiralty schools to teach arithmetic and geometry to the children of clerks (government officials) and of other ranks of the service class people.

In 1786 Catherine the Great approved the **Regulations of Public Schools** worked out by the commission. In accordance with them every province centre established four-year major public schools and every district town established two-year minor public schools. In Vladimir a major public school was opened in 1786. P. M. Izvolsky was appointed the first principal of the major public school and Vinogradov and Voronin were the first teachers. The educational establishments were to be kept up **at the expense** of the Welfare Board. In the late 18<sup>th</sup> century, the Vladimir province employed 7 teachers and educated 290 school children in one major and four minor public schools.

In 1750 a theological seminary was opened in Vladimir. In 1788 an outstanding statesman of Russia, a **native of** the Vladimir land, Mikhail Speransky became its graduate. M. Speransky was born into the family of a rural priest in the village of Cherkutino of the Vladimir province. The Cherkutino village belonged to count Saltykov at that time. When visiting his estate he used to call on the house of the local priest. Owing to his intellect and broad education Speransky held the position of the State Secretary under Alexander I and worked on the enormous project of the state reforms.

Timofei Osipovsky born in the village of Osipovo of the Kovrov district was also a graduate of the Vladimir theological seminary. T. Osipovsky who was a professor of mathematics since 1803 and later the rector of the Kharkov university wrote a three-volume work “The course of

Mathematics”. A great imprint on the Russian culture was left by the natives of the Vladimir land P. Sumarokov, V. S. Sopikov and D. I. Vinogradov.

Dmitry Vinogradov, born in Suzdal, is by right considered the creator of the Russian **porcelain** and the organizer of the porcelain production in Russia. Vasily Sopikov is called the father of Russian bibliography. He was born in Suzdal in 1765. In St. Petersburg he opened the first book store where only Russian books were sold. The main work of Sopikov was “Experience of Russian Bibliography” containing descriptions of 13 thousand books.

Artist Stepan Lagutin had a unique fate. He was a master of glass cutting and had been working in this field since 1740s, i. e., at the time when the Russian school of cutting with its own type of decor was taking shape.

In 1740 – 1760s the ideas of the Enlightenment penetrated to Russia. These ideas found the most complete realization in the views of A. Radishchev.

The son of Roman Illarionovich Vorontsov, Alexander Romanovich was a famous statesman and the president of the Board of Commerce since 1773. He was acquainted with the public figures of the French Enlightenment, Voltaire for instance, and supported the Enlightenment ideas. In 1778 Radishchev started to work for the Board of Commerce and he was a member of the masonic lodge “Urania” together with A. Vorontsov. After the arrest and passing a death sentence upon A. Radishchev A. Vorontsov and other prominent figures signed a petition to Catherine the Great to moderate punishment. The Empress substituted the **death penalty** for 10 years of exile to Siberia.

Alexander Romanovich Vorontsov was the owner of the Andreevskoye estate in the Pokrov district in the Vladimir region. It was the Vorontsovs’ family estate. The nobility estates as a specific complex appeared in the second half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century actually after the decree of 1762 which freed the nobles from the compulsory state service. The decree gave the nobility the possibility to return to their estates and take care of the economy of the estates.

The architectural and artistic outlook of the Andreevskoye estate formed in the second half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century. The Andreevskoye village (the

Petushky district today) was situated not far from the small river Nergel flowing into the Peksha. The estate comprised a huge three-storied count's **mansion** with **wings**, household structures as well as a garden and hothouses where oranges, lemons and pineapples were grown. In 1772 instead of the old village church a new stone temple was erected, the construction of a school and an **almshouse** was under way. The house was surrounded by the park laid out in the French or regular style with clear-cut planning of the alleys, lawns, carefully chosen species of trees.

In 1789 Vorontsov decided to set up a theatre to accommodate which the reconstruction of the house was undertaken in Andreevskoye. The serfs played in the theatre – there were 65 actors, 38 musicians, 13 men dancers and some women dancers. The interior decoration of the palace was remarkable for luxuriant splendour. The front rooms with parquet floors had oak paneling, **column caps**, vases, **garlands** and mirror frames were **gilded**, pictures were put into special niches. The walls of some rooms were **upholstered** with Vladimir motley cotton fabric. The palace was heated by **glazed tile stoves** to decorate which over 3 thousand tiles were brought from Gzhel.

The portrait gallery is of special interest. It had been formed in the course of many decades. By the early 19<sup>th</sup> century, the collection had consisted of 284 works including 22 portraits of tsars. A number of portraits is linked with the name of one of the most famous artists of the 18<sup>th</sup> century A. Levitsky. It is known that A. Vorontsov paid Levitsky sums of money for the portrait of Semyon Vorontsov (A. Vorontsov's brother). The estate was often visited by Catherine Dashkova (the daughter of R. Vorontsov, whose married name was Dashkova, the Director of the Petersburg Academy of Sciences and the President of the Russian Academy).

The life of the serf village was largely controlled by the village community. One of the elements of the public life of the village was the neighbourly help to the fellow-villagers who found themselves in hard conditions as a consequence of a fire, grave illness, orphanage, widowhood and loss of a horse.

Seasonal work outside the village became part of the peasant everyday life in the 17<sup>th</sup> – 18<sup>th</sup> centuries. Among Vladimir peasants doing seasonal work the prominent place was taken by **pedlars (higglers of petty goods)**. They sold icons, paper, **cheap popular prints**, needles, earrings, rings, etc. Pedlars used their own special language which they spoke between themselves. The Vyazniky and Kovrov districts were especially famous for their pedlars. Vyazniky pedlars took holy icons to faraway countries like Poland, Greece, Serbia, Bulgaria and other places.

The icon-painting crafts of the Vladimir Province in the villages of Mstyora, Palekh and Kholui are widely known. First of all, to paint an icon “an original”, i. e., a brush drawing on thick paper, was made. These drawings had the artistic value of their own and were inherited from generation to generation in the icon-painters’ families (some of them have been preserved up to nowadays). The production of cheap popular prints appeared in Mstyora. In 1762 – 1764 in Palekh the new stone church of Elijah the Prophet was built using the means of icon-painters.

***Task 2. Match the following English and Russian words and word combinations:***

- |                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) clerks;                        | a) цифирные школы;            |
| 2) craftsmen;                     | b) гравировка по стеклу;      |
| 3) service class people;          | c) пестрядь;                  |
| 4) arithmetic schools;            | d) помещное хозяйство;        |
| 5) Regulations of Public Schools; | e) вынести смертный приговор; |
| 6) theological seminary;          | f) флигель;                   |
| 7) glass cutting;                 | g) приказные люди;            |
| 8) Board of Commerce;             | h) покрывать позолотой;       |
| 9) pass a death sentence upon;    | i) особняк;                   |
| 10) nobility estate;              | j) парадная комната;          |
| 11) economy of the estate;        | k) посадский люд;             |
| 12) wing;                         | l) исключительная пышность;   |

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 13) mansion;                              | m) дворянская усадьба;    |
| 14) hothouse;                             | n) служилые люди;         |
| 15) almshouse;                            | o) Коммерц-коллегия;      |
| 16) luxuriant splendor;                   | p) отходничество;         |
| 17) front room;                           | q) богадельня;            |
| 18) gild;                                 | r) Устав народных училищ; |
| 19) motley cotton fabric;                 | s) оранжерея;             |
| 20) glazed tile stove;                    | t) духовная семинария;    |
| 21) seasonal work outside<br>the village; | u) лубочная картинка;     |
| 22) cheap popular print.                  | v) изразцовая печь.       |

***Task 3. Consult the text and find the English equivalents of the following words and word combinations.***

Приобрести светский характер; дети дворян, приказных, служилых и посадских людей; Устав народных училищ; четырехклассные главные народные училища; двухклассные малые народные училища; духовная семинария; выдающийся государственный деятель России, уроженец Владимирского края; пост статс-секретаря при Александре I; создатель русского фарфора; мастер гравировки по стеклу; поддерживать просветительские идеи; входить в масонскую ложу; заменить смертную казнь ссылкой в Сибирь на 10 лет; дворянская усадьба; освободить дворян от обязательной государственной службы; заниматься хозяйством; архитектурный и художественный облик усадьбы Андреевское; огромный графский дом в три этажа с флигелями, хозяйственными постройками, а также сад и оранжереи; богадельня; крепостные; исключительная пышность; парадные комнаты; отапливать изразцовыми печами; соседская помощь односельчанам, оказавшимся в трудном положении вследствие пожара, тяжелой болезни, сиротства, вдовства, падежа лошадей; отходничество; офени – торговцы мелким товаром вразнос; производство лубочных картинок.



***Task 4. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word.***

1. Russian culture assumed ... character in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.  
a) religious;                      b) secular;                      c) regular.
2. It was only in Yuriev-Polsky of the Vladimir land that an arithmetic school was established where 18 children of the ... studied.  
a) nobles;                      b) trade people;                      c) clergy.
3. In Vladimir a major public school was opened in ... .  
a) 1686;                      b) 1786;                      c) 1886.
4. In 1788 Mikhail ... became a graduate of the theological seminary of Vladimir.  
a) Osipovsky;                      b) Sumarokov;                      c) Speransky.
5. ... is considered the creator of the Russian porcelain.  
a) Vinogradov;                      b) Sumarokov;                      c) Sopikov.
6. ... is called the father of Russian bibliography.  
a) Radishchev;                      b) Lagutin;                      c) Sopikov.
7. ... was a master of glass cutting.  
a) Sumarokov;                      b) Lagutin;                      c) Osipovsky.
8. The architectural and artistic outlook of the Andreevskoye estate formed in the ... of the 18<sup>th</sup> century.  
a) first half;                      b) middle;                      c) second half.
9. In 1789 Vorontsov decided to set up a ... in Andreevskoye.  
a) theatre;                      b) temple;                      c) hothouse.
10. The palace in Andreevskoye was heated by glazed tile stoves to decorate which over 3 thousand tiles were brought from ... .  
a) Mstyora;                      b) Palekh;                      c) Gzhel.
11. Among Vladimir peasants doing seasonal work the prominent place was taken by ... .  
a) pedlars;                      b) wholesalers;                      c) craftsmen.
12. The production of cheap popular prints appeared in ... .  
a) Mstyora;                      b) Palekh;                      c) Gzhel.

***Task 5. Agree or disagree with the statements given below. Make the necessary changes for the false information to become true.***

1. In 1722 an arithmetic school was opened in Vladimir.
2. In 1727 Suzdal, Yuriev-Polsky, Pereslavl-Zalessky and Vladimir had Admiralty schools to teach Mathematics, History and Russian to the children of clerks and other ranks of the service class people.
3. In the late 18<sup>th</sup> century, the Vladimir province had two major and six minor public schools.
4. M. Speransky and T. Osypovsky were graduates of the theological seminary of Vladimir.
5. Speransky held the position of the State Secretary under Alexander I and worked on the enormous project of the state reforms.
6. T. Osipovsky was a professor of mathematics.
7. Sopikov opened the first book store in St. Petersburg where Russian and foreign books were sold.
8. Alexander Romanovich Vorontsov was a famous statesman and the president of the Board of Commerce since 1773.
9. Alexander Romanovich Vorontsov was the owner of the Andreevskoye estate in the Pokrov district in the Vladimir region.
10. The Andreevskoye estate comprised a huge five-storied count's mansion with wings, household structures as well as a garden and hothouses where oranges, lemons and pineapples were grown.
11. By the early 19<sup>th</sup> century, the collection of the portrait gallery in the Andreevskoye estate had consisted of 284 works including 22 portraits of tsars.
12. Pedlars used Russian language which they spoke between themselves.
13. Vyazniky and Melenky districts were especially famous for their pedlars.
14. The icon-painting crafts of the Vladimir Province in the villages of Mstyora, Palekh and Kholui are widely known.

***Task 6. Answer the questions.***

1. When was an arithmetic school opened in Vladimir?
2. How many boys graduated from this arithmetic school in 1725?
3. When was a major public school opened in Vladimir?
4. When was a theological seminary opened in Vladimir?
5. What is M. Speransky famous for?
6. What is T. Osipovsky known for?
7. What did D. Vinogradov create?
8. Why is V. Sopikov called the father of Russian bibliography?
9. What field did S. Lagutin work in?
10. How can you describe A. R. Vorontsov's estate in the village Andreevskoye in the Pokrov district of the Vladimir region?
11. What did pedlars sell?
12. What villages of the Vladimir province are widely known for their icon-painting crafts?

***Task 7. Make a presentation about one of the famous men who were born in the Vladimir land in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.***

## ЗАКЛЮЧЕНИЕ

В учебном пособии представлен материал, посвященный Владимирскому краю в контексте политического, социального, экономического и культурного развития региона с древнейших времен до XVIII века. Значимость курса для профессиональной подготовки лингвистов, историков, музеологов, специалистов в сфере туристического бизнеса (гидов-переводчиков, экскурсоводов) обусловлена, прежде всего, развитием навыков межкультурного общения, обеспечивающих эффективность социальных и профессиональных контактов.

Лекционный материал дает студентам возможность расширить и закрепить знания об истории, культуре, традициях Владимирского края. Система упражнений направлена на проверку понимания прочитанного материала, закрепление лексики, формирование и совершенствование у студентов навыков иноязычного общения.

Курс обеспечивает студентов не только большим объемом фактологического материала, но и формирует способности к анализу возможных проблем межкультурной коммуникации, готовит к успешному межкультурному общению. Изучение языка в тесной взаимосвязи с историей и культурой – неотъемлемый компонент обучения студентов гуманитарных специальностей.

## РЕКОМЕНДАТЕЛЬНЫЙ БИБЛИОГРАФИЧЕСКИЙ СПИСОК

1. История Владимирского края с древнейших времен до конца XVIII в. : учеб. пособие / Ю. Э. Жарнов [и др.] ; под. ред. Д. И. Копылова. – Владимир : Влад. офсет. тип., 1998. – 200 с.
2. Бадер, О. Н. Сунгирь – верхнепалеолитическая стоянка / О. Н. Бадер. – М. : Наука, 1978. – 271 с.
3. Кучкин, В. А. Формирование государственной территории в северо-восточной Руси в X – XIV вв. / В. А. Кучкин. – М. : Наука, 1984. – 352 с.
4. Воронин, Н. Н. Владимир, Боголюбovo, Суздаль, Юрьев-Польский / Н. Н. Воронин. – М. : Искусство, 1983. – 295 с.
5. Воронин, Н. Н. Зодчество северо-восточной Руси XIII – XV вв. : в 2 т. / Н. Н. Воронин. – М. : Изд-во АН СССР, 1961 – 1962.
6. Кривошеев, Ю. В. Гибель Андрея Боголюбского: историческое расследование / Ю. В. Кривошеев. – СПб. : Изд-во С.-Петербур. ун-та, 2003. – 240 с. – ISBN 5-288-03328-5.
7. Лимонов, Ю. А. Владимиро-Суздальская Русь / Ю. А. Лимонов. – Л. : Наука, 1987. – 217 с.
8. Святой Александр Невский, защитник земли русской : сб. ст. – М. : Православный Свято-Тихоновский Богословский ин-т, 2001. – 558 с. – ISBN 5-7429-0112-7.
9. Алферова, Г. В. Русские города XVI – XVII вв. / Г. В. Алферова. – М. : Стройиздат, 1989. – 216 с. – ISBN 5-274-00675-2.
10. Фролов, Н. В. Владимирские наместники и губернаторы / Н. В. Фролов. – Ковров : БЭСТ-В, 1998. – 151 с. – ISBN 5-89312-024-8.
11. Русско-английский словарь [Электронный ресурс]. – URL: [https://woordhunt.ru/dic/content/ru\\_en](https://woordhunt.ru/dic/content/ru_en) (дата обращения: 15.08.2021).
12. Словарь Мультитран [Электронный ресурс]. – URL: <https://www.multitrans.com/> (дата обращения: 17.08.2021).
13. Lingvo Live – онлайн-словарь от АBBYY [Электронный ресурс]. – URL: <https://www.lingvolive.com/ru-ru> (дата обращения: 17.08.2021).
14. Cambridge Dictionary [Электронный ресурс]. – URL: <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/> (дата обращения: 14.08.2021).

## ОГЛАВЛЕНИЕ

<b>ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ</b> .....	3
<b>Unit 1. Our Region in the Period of Ancient History</b> .....	4
<i>Lesson 1.</i> Periods of Ancient History. The Vladimir Region in the Paleolithic Period. Sunghir Archaeological Site.....	4
<i>Lesson 2.</i> The Vladimir Region in the Mesolithic, Neolithic, Bronze and Iron Periods.....	12
<b>Unit 2. North-Eastern Russia in the 8<sup>th</sup> – first half of the 12<sup>th</sup> century</b> .....	22
<i>Lesson 1.</i> Nature and Climatic Peculiarities of Meshchora and Opolye. The Finno-Ugrian Population of the Vladimir Land. Merya and Muroma Settlements .....	22
<i>Lesson 2.</i> The Finno-Ugrian Tribe Meshchora.....	30
<i>Lesson 3.</i> The Beginning of the Slavonic Colonization of North-Eastern Russia .....	36
<b>Unit 3. The Rostov and Suzdal Land under Vladimir Monomakh and Yuri Dolgoruky</b> .....	43
<i>Lesson 1.</i> The Princely Power Establishing in the North-East of Russia.....	43
<i>Lesson 2.</i> The Continuation of the Slav Colonization. Occupations of the Local Population .....	48
<i>Lesson 3.</i> Trade. Towns. The policy of Vladimir Monomakh and Yuri Dolgoruky .....	57
<b>Unit 4. The flourishing of the Vladimir-Suzdal Principality in the second half of the 12<sup>th</sup> century</b> .....	65
<i>Lesson 1.</i> The Reign of Andrei Bogolyubsky.....	65
<i>Lesson 2.</i> The Political Crisis after Andrei Bogolyubsky's Death. Vsevolod the Big Nest .....	75
<i>Lesson 3.</i> The Culture Flourishing of the Vladimir-Suzdal Principality .....	82

<b>Unit 5. The Vladimir-Suzdal Principality in the Period of the Tatar-Mongol Yoke</b> .....	100
<i>Lesson 1.</i> The Territory of the Vladimir-Suzdal Principality before the Invasion. Internecine Struggle .....	100
<i>Lesson 2.</i> The Intrusion of the Tatar-Mongols and the Heroic Defense of Vladimir. The Yoke Establishment .....	109
<i>Lesson 3.</i> The Reign of Alexander Nevsky .....	119
<b>Unit 6. The Vladimir Land within the Moscow State (the 14<sup>th</sup> – 15<sup>th</sup> Centuries)</b> .....	127
<i>Lesson 1.</i> The Rise of Moscow and the Struggle of Moscow Princes against Tver for the Vladimir Throne. Ivan Kalita .....	127
<i>Lesson 2.</i> Vasily's I Reign. The Internecine Struggle of the Second Quarter of the 15 <sup>th</sup> Century. Formation and Growth of Feudal Land Tenure .....	136
<i>Lesson 3.</i> Culture of the 14 <sup>th</sup> – 15 <sup>th</sup> Centuries .....	146
<b>Unit 7. The Vladimir Land in the 16<sup>th</sup> – 17<sup>th</sup> Centuries</b> .....	156
<i>Lesson 1.</i> The Social and Economic Development of the Vladimir Land .....	156
<i>Lesson 2.</i> Ivan the Terrible and Alexandrova Sloboda .....	164
<i>Lesson 3.</i> The Time of Troubles in the Vladimir Land. Dmitry Mikhailovich Pozharsky .....	171
<b>Unit 8. The Vladimir Land in the 18<sup>th</sup> Century</b> .....	186
<i>Lesson 1.</i> The Vladimir Land and Peter I. The Vladimir Gubernia Establishing .....	186
<i>Lesson 2.</i> Social and Economic Policy in the 18 <sup>th</sup> Century .....	198
<i>Lesson 3.</i> Culture of the 18 <sup>th</sup> Century .....	210
<b>ЗАКЛЮЧЕНИЕ</b> .....	219
<b>РЕКОМЕНДАТЕЛЬНЫЙ БИБЛИОГРАФИЧЕСКИЙ СПИСОК</b> .....	220

*Учебное издание*

ИЩЕНКО Анна Андреевна  
ПОПКОВА Ольга Владимировна  
МАТЯР Татьяна Ивановна

ВЛАДИМИРСКИЙ КРАЙ С ДРЕВНЕЙШИХ ВРЕМЕН ДО XVIII ВЕКА

Учебное пособие по истории на английском языке

*На первой полосе обложки размещена фотография исторического памятника  
г. Владимира «Золотые ворота»*

Редактор Е. А. Платонова

Технические редакторы Ш. В. Абдуллаев, Н. В. Пустовойтова

Корректор иностранного языка Л. В. Сулова

Компьютерная верстка Л. В. Макаровой

Выпускающий редактор А. А. Амирсейидова

Подписано в печать 25.03.22.

Формат 60×84/16. Усл. печ. л. 13,02. Тираж 77 экз.

Заказ

Издательство

Владимирского государственного университета  
имени Александра Григорьевича и Николая Григорьевича Столетовых.  
600000, Владимир, ул. Горького, 87.